TEI Lite: Encoding for Interchange: an introduction to the TEI
Final revised edition for TEI P5
Lou Burnard  C. M. Sperberg-McQueen  August 2012
Prefatory note

TEI Lite was the name adopted for what the TEI editors originally conceived of as a simple demonstration of how the TEI (Text Encoding Initiative) encoding scheme might be adopted to meet 90% of the needs of 90% of the TEI user community. In retrospect, it was predictable that many people should imagine TEI Lite to be all there is to TEI, or find TEI Lite to be far too heavy for their needs.

The original TEI Lite (1996) was based largely on observations of existing and previous practice in the encoding of texts, particularly as manifest in the collections of the Oxford Text Archive and other collections of the period. It is therefore unsurprising that it seems to have become, if not a de facto standard, at least a common point of departure for electronic text centres and encoding projects world wide. Maybe the fact that we actually produced this shortish, readable, manual for it also helped.

Early adopters of TEI Lite included a number of Electronic Text Centers and digital library initiatives. It was also adopted as the basis for some early TEI-conformant authoring systems, and as the basis for introductory tutorials, many of them in languages other than English (see further the list of legacy versions at http://www.tei-c.org/Vault/P4/Lite/).

In 2002, following the publication of TEI P4, the XML version of the TEI Guidelines, which uses the generation of TEI Lite as an example of the TEI modification mechanism, the opportunity was taken to produce a lightly revised XML-conformant version. In 2006, a more substantially revised version based on TEI P5 was produced; this reflected the many changes between TEI P4 and TEI P5, but was not otherwise significantly different. In 2012, the TEI Technical Council, decided that a final revision should be undertaken to ensure that the documentation remained consistent with the latest (2.1) release of TEI P5. This version uses a recently added mechanism in the TEI customization architecture, which permits a customization to define only the TEI elements to be included in a schema, rather than the elements to be excluded from it. As such it is probably more resilient to change than earlier versions.

Lou Burnard, August 2012
TEI Lite: Encoding for Interchange: an introduction to the TEI — Final revised edition for TEI P5
This document provides an introduction to the recommendations of the Text Encoding Initiative (TEI), by describing a specific subset of the full TEI encoding scheme. The scheme documented here can be used to encode a wide variety of commonly encountered textual features, in such a way as to maximize the usability of electronic transcriptions and to facilitate their interchange among scholars using different computer systems. It is fully compatible with the full TEI scheme, as defined by TEI document P5, *Guidelines for Electronic Text Encoding and Interchange*, as of February 2006, and available from the TEI Consortium website at http://www.tei-c.org/.

1 Introduction

The Text Encoding Initiative (TEI) Guidelines are addressed to anyone who wants to interchange information stored in an electronic form. They emphasize the interchange of textual information, but other forms of information such as images and sound are also addressed. The Guidelines are equally applicable in the creation of new resources and in the interchange of existing ones.

The Guidelines provide a means of making explicit certain features of a text in such a way as to aid the processing of that text by computer software running on different machines. This process of making explicit we call *markup* or *encoding*. Any textual representation on a computer uses some form of markup; the TEI came into being partly because of the enormous variety of mutually incomprehensible encoding schemes currently besetting scholarship, and partly because of the expanding range of scholarly uses now being identified for texts in electronic form.

The TEI Guidelines describe an encoding scheme which can be expressed using a number of different formal languages. The first editions of the Guidelines used the *Standard Generalized Markup Language* (SGML); since 2002, this has been replaced by the use of the Extensible Markup Language (XML). These markup languages have in common the definition of text in terms of *elements* and *attributes*, and rules governing their appearance within a text. The TEI's use of XML is ambitious in its complexity and generality, but it is fundamentally no different from that of any other XML markup scheme, and so any general-purpose XML-aware software is able to process TEI-conformant texts.

Since 2001, the TEI has been a community initiative supported by an international membership consortium. It was originally an international research project sponsored by the Association for Computers and the Humanities, the Association for Computational Linguistics, and the Association for Literary and Linguistic Computing, with substantial funding over its first five years from the U.S. National Endowment for the Humanities, Directorate General XIII of the Commission of the European Communities, the Andrew W. Mellon Foundation, the Social Science and Humanities Research Council of Canada and others. The Guidelines were first published in May 1994, after six years of development involving many hundreds of scholars from different academic disciplines worldwide. During the years that followed, the Guidelines became increasingly influential in the development of the digital library, in the language industries, and even in the development of the World Wide Web itself. The TEI Consortium was set up in January 2001, and a year later produced an edition of the Guidelines entirely revised for XML compatibility. In 2004, it set about a major revision of the Guidelines to take full advantage of new schema languages, the first release of which appeared in 2005. This revision of the TEI Lite document conforms to version 2.1 of this most recent edition of the Guidelines, TEI P5, released in June 2012.

At the outset of its work, the overall goals of the TEI were defined by the closing statement of a planning conference held at Vassar College, N.Y., in November, 1987; these Poughkeepsie Principles were further elaborated in a series of design documents. The Guidelines, say these design documents, should:

- suffice to represent the textual features needed for research;
1 INTRODUCTION

- be simple, clear, and concrete;
- be easy for researchers to use without special-purpose software;
- allow the rigorous definition and efficient processing of texts;
- provide for user-defined extensions;
- conform to existing and emergent standards.

The world of scholarship is large and diverse. For the Guidelines to have wide acceptability, it was important to ensure that:

1. the common core of textual features be easily shared;
2. additional specialist features be easy to add to (or remove from) a text;
3. multiple parallel encodings of the same feature should be possible;
4. the richness of markup should be user-defined, with a very small minimal requirement;
5. adequate documentation of the text and its encoding should be provided.

The present document describes a manageable selection from the extensive set of elements and recommendations resulting from those design goals, which is called TEI Lite.

In selecting from the several hundred elements defined by the full TEI scheme, we have tried to identify a useful starter set, comprising the elements which almost every user should know about. Experience working with TEI Lite will be invaluable in understanding the full TEI scheme and in knowing how to integrate specialized parts of it into the general TEI framework.

Our goals in defining this subset may be summarized as follows:

- it should be able to handle adequately a reasonably wide variety of texts, at the level of detail found in existing practice (as demonstrated in, for example, the holdings of the Oxford Text Archive);
- it should be useful for the production of new documents (such as this one) as well as the encoding of existing texts;
- it should be usable with a wide range of existing XML software;
- it should be a pure subset of the full TEI scheme and defined using the customizaticon methods described in the TEI Guidelines;
- it should be as small and simple as is consistent with the other goals.

The reader may judge our success in meeting these goals for him or herself.

Although we have tried to make this document self-contained, as suits a tutorial text, the reader should be aware that it does not cover every detail of the TEI encoding scheme. All of the elements described here are fully documented in the TEI Guidelines themselves, which should be consulted for authoritative reference information on these, and on the many others which are not described here. Some basic knowledge of XML is assumed.
2 A Short Example

We begin with a short example, intended to show what happens when a passage of prose is typed into a computer by someone with little sense of the purpose of mark-up, or the potential of electronic texts. It attempts to be faithful to the appearance of the printed text, by retaining the original line breaks, by introducing blanks to represent the layout of the original headings and page breaks, and so forth. Where characters not available on the keyboard are needed (such as the accented letter $a$ in $faàl$ or the long dash), it attempts to mimic their appearance.

CHAPTER 38

READER, I married him. A quiet wedding we had: he and I, the par-
son and clerk, were alone present. When we got back from church, I
went into the kitchen of the manor-house, where Mary was cooking
the dinner, and John cleaning the knives, and I said --
'Mary, I have been married to Mr Rochester this morning.' The
housekeeper and her husband were of that decent, phlegmatic
order of people, to whom one may at any time safely communicate a
remarkable piece of news without incurring the danger of having
one's ears pierced by some shrill ejaculation and subsequently stunned
by a torrent of wordy wonderment. Mary did look up, and she did
stare at me; the ladle with which she was basting a pair of chickens
roasting at the fire, did for some three minutes hang suspended in air,
and for the same space of time John's knives also had rest from the
polishing process; but Mary, bending again over the roast, said only --
'Have you, miss? Well, for sure!'
A short time after she pursued, 'I seed you go out with the master,
but I didn't know you were gone to church to be wed'; and she
basted away. John, when I turned to him, was grinning from ear to
ear.
'I telled Mary how it would be,' he said: 'I knew what Mr Ed-
ward' (John was an old servant, and had known his master when he
was the cadet of the house, therefore he often gave him his Christian
name) -- 'I knew what Mr Edward would do; and I was certain he
would not wait long either: and he's done right, for aught I know. I
wish you joy, miss!' and he politely pulled his forelock.
'Thank you, John. Mr Rochester told me to give you and Mary
this.'
I put into his hand a five-pound note. Without waiting to hear
more, I left the kitchen. In passing the door of that sanctum some time
after, I caught the words --
'She'll happen do better for him nor ony o' t' grand ladies.' And
again, 'If she ben't one o' th' handsomest, she's noan faa\l, and vary
good-natured; and i' his een she's fair beautiful, onybody may see
that.'
I wrote to Moor House and to Cambridge immediately, to say what
I had done: fully explaining also why I had thus acted. Diana and

474

JANE EYRE

Mary approved the step unreservedly. Diana announced that she
would just give me time to get over the honeymoon, and then she
would come and see me.
'She had better not wait till then, Jane,' said Mr Rochester, when I
read her letter to him; 'if she does, she will be too late, for our honey-
moon will shine our life long: its beams will only fade over your
grave or mine.'
How St John received the news I don't know: he never answered the letter in which I communicated it: yet six months after he wrote to me, without, however, mentioning Mr Rochester's name or alluding to my marriage. His letter was then calm, and though very serious, kind. He has maintained a regular, though not very frequent correspondence ever since: he hopes I am happy, and trusts I am not of those who live without God in the world, and only mind earthly things.

This transcription suffers from a number of shortcomings:

- the page numbers and running titles are intermingled with the text in a way which makes it difficult for software to disentangle them;
- no distinction is made between single quotation marks and apostrophe, so it is difficult to know exactly which passages are in direct speech;
- the preservation of the copy text's hyphenation means that simple-minded search programs will not find the broken words;
- the accented letter in faàl and the long dash have been rendered by ad hoc keying conventions which follow no standard pattern and will be processed correctly only if the transcriber remembers to mention them in the documentation;
- paragraph divisions are marked only by the use of white space, and hard carriage returns have been introduced at the end of each line. Consequently, if the size of type used to print the text changes, reformatting will be problematic.

We now present the same passage, as it might be encoded using the TEI Guidelines. As we shall see, there are many ways in which this encoding could be extended, but as a minimum, the TEI approach allows us to represent the following distinctions:

- Paragraph and chapter divisions are now marked explicitly.
- Apostrophes are distinguished from quotation marks; direct speech is explicitly marked.
- The accented letter and the long dash are correctly represented.
- Page divisions have been marked with an empty `<pb>` element alone.
- The lineation of the original has not been retained and words broken by typographic accident at the end of a line have been re-assembled without comment.
- For convenience of proof reading, a new line has been introduced at the start of each paragraph, but the indentation is removed.
husband were of that decent, phlegmatic order of people, to whom one may at any
time safely communicate a remarkable piece of news without incurring the danger of having one's ears pierced by some shrill ejaculation and subsequently stunned by a torrent of wordy wonderment. Mary did look up, and she did stare at me; the ladle with which she was basting a pair of chickens roasting at the fire, did for some three minutes hang suspended in air, and for the same space of time John's knives also had rest from the polishing process; but
Mary, bending again over the roast, said only —</p>
</q>
</p>

A short time after she pursued, <q>I seed you go out with the master, but I didn't know you were gone to church to be wed</q>; and she basted away. John, when I turned to him, was grinning from ear to ear. <q>I telled Mary how it would be</q>, he said: <q>I knew what Mr Edward would do; and I was certain he would not wait long either: and he's done right, for aught I know. I wish you joy, miss!</q> and he politely pulled his forelock.

Thank you, John. Mr Rochester told me to give you and Mary this.</p>

I put into his hand a five-pound note. Without waiting to hear more, I left the kitchen. In passing the door of that sanctum some time after, I caught the words —

She'll happen do better for him nor ony o' t' grand ladies.</q> And again, <q>If she ben't one o' th' handsomest, she's noan faàl, and varry good-natured; and i' his een she's fair beautiful, onybody may see that.</q>

I wrote to Moor House and to Cambridge immediately, to say what I had done: fully explaining also why I had thus acted. Diana and <pb n="475"/> Mary approved the step unreservedly. Diana announced that she would just give me time to get over the honeymoon, and then she would come and see me.

She had better not wait till then, Jane,</q> said Mr Rochester, when I read her letter to him; <q>if she does, she will be too late, for our honeymoon will shine our life long: its beams will only fade over your grave or mine.</q>

How St John received the news I don't know: he never answered the letter in which I communicated it: yet six months after he wrote to me, without, however, mentioning Mr Rochester's name or alluding to my marriage. His letter was then calm, and
This particular encoding represents a set of choices or priorities. As a trivial example, note that in the second example, end-of-line hyphenation has been silently removed. Conceivably Brontë (or her printer) intended the word honeymoon to appear as honey-moon on its second appearance, though this seems unlikely: our decision to focus on Brontë’s text, rather than on the printing of it in this particular edition, makes it impossible to be certain. This is an instance of the fundamental selectivity of any encoding. An encoding makes explicit only those textual features of importance to the encoder. It is not difficult to think of ways in which the encoding of even this short passage might readily be extended. For example:

- a regularized form of the passages in dialect could be provided;
- footnotes glossing or commenting on any passage could be added;
- pointers linking parts of this text to others could be added;
- proper names of various kinds could be distinguished from the surrounding text;
- detailed bibliographic information about the text’s provenance and context could be prefixed to it;
- a linguistic analysis of the passage into sentences, clauses, words, etc., could be provided, each unit being associated with appropriate category codes;
- the text could be segmented into narrative or discourse units;
- systematic analysis or interpretation of the text could be included in the encoding, with potentially complex alignment or linkage between the text and the analysis, or between the text and one or more translations of it;
- passages in the text could be linked to images or sound held on other media.

TEI-recommended ways of carrying out most of these are described in the remainder of this document. The TEI scheme as a whole also provides for an enormous range of other possibilities, of which we cite only a few:

- detailed analysis of the components of names;
- detailed meta-information providing thesaurus-style information about the text’s origins or topics;
- information about the printing history or manuscript variations exhibited by a particular series of versions of the text.

For recommendations on these and many other possibilities, the full Guidelines should be consulted.
3 The Structure of a TEI Text

All TEI-conformant texts contain (a) a TEI header (marked up as a `<teiHeader>` element) and (b) the transcription of the text proper (marked up as a `<text>` element). These two elements are combined together to form a single `<TEI>` element, which must be declared within the TEI namespace.\(^1\)

The TEI header provides information analogous to that provided by the title page of a printed text. It has up to four parts: a bibliographic description of the machine-readable text, a description of the way it has been encoded, a non-bibliographic description of the text (a text profile), and a revision history. The header is described in more detail in section 19. The Electronic Title Page.\(^2\)

A TEI text may be unitary (a single work) or composite (a collection of single works, such as an anthology). In either case, the text may have an optional front or back. In between is the body of the text, which, in the case of a composite text, may consist of groups, each containing more groups or texts.

A unitary text will be encoded using an overall structure like this:

```xml
<TEI xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <teiHeader>
    <!-- [ TEI Header information ] -->
  </teiHeader>
  <text>
    <front>
      <!-- [ front matter ... ] -->
    </front>
    <body>
      <!-- [ body of text ... ] -->
    </body>
    <back>
      <!-- [ back matter ... ] -->
    </back>
  </text>
</TEI>
```

A composite text also has an optional front and back. In between occur one or more groups of texts, each with its own optional front and back matter. A composite text will thus be encoded using an overall structure like this:

```xml
<TEI xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <teiHeader>
    <!-- [ header information for the composite ] -->
  </teiHeader>
  <text>
    <front>
      <!-- [ front matter for the composite ] -->
    </front>
    <group>
      <text>
        <front>
          <!-- [ front matter of first text ] -->
        </front>
        <body>
          <!-- [ body of first text ] -->
        </body>
      </text>
    </group>
    <body>
      <!-- [ body of first text ] -->
    </body>
  </text>
</TEI>
```

---

\(^1\)A namespace is an XML concept. Its function is to identify the vocabulary from which a group of element names are drawn, using a standard identifier resembling a web address. The namespace for all TEI elements is http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0
It is also possible to define a composite of complete TEI texts, each with its own header. Such a collection is known as a *TEI corpus*, and may itself have a header:

```
<teiCorpus xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <teiHeader>
    <!--[header information for the corpus]-->  
  </teiHeader>
  <TEI>
    <teiHeader>
      <!--[header information for first text]-->  
    </teiHeader>
    <text>
      <!--[first text in corpus]-->  
    </text>
  </TEI>
  <TEI>
    <teiHeader>
      <!--[header information for second text]-->  
    </teiHeader>
    <text>
      <!--[second text in corpus]-->  
    </text>
  </TEI>
</teiCorpus>
```

It is also possible to create a composite of corpora – that is, one `<teiCorpus>` element may contain many nested `<teiCorpus>` elements rather than many nested `<TEI>` elements, to any depth considered necessary.

In the remainder of this document, we discuss chiefly simple text structures. The discussion in each case consists of a short list of relevant TEI *elements* with a brief definition of each, followed by definitions for any *attributes* specific to that element, and a reference to any *classes* of which the element is a member. These references are linked to full specifications for each object, as given in the TEI *Guidelines*. In most cases, short examples are also given.

For example, here are the elements discussed so far:
(TEI document) contains a single TEI-conformant document, combining a single TEI header with one or more members of the model.resource class. Multiple <TEI> elements may be combined within a <TEI> (or <teiCorpus>) element.

(TEI header) supplies descriptive and declarative metadata associated with a digital resource or set of resources.

(text) contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, for example a poem or drama, a collection of essays, a novel, a dictionary, or a corpus sample.

(TEI corpus) contains the whole of a TEI encoded corpus, comprising a single corpus header and one or more <TEI> elements, each containing a single text header and a text.

4 Encoding the Body

As indicated above, a simple TEI document at the textual level consists of the following elements:

(front matter) contains any prefatory matter (headers, abstracts, title page, prefaces, dedications, etc.) found at the start of a document, before the main body.

(group) contains the body of a composite text, grouping together a sequence of distinct texts (or groups of such texts) which are regarded as a unit for some purpose, for example the collected works of an author, a sequence of prose essays, etc.

(text body) contains the whole body of a single unitary text, excluding any front or back matter.

(back matter) contains any appendixes, etc. following the main part of a text.

Elements specific to front and back matter are described below in section 18. Front and Back Matter. In this section we discuss the elements making up the body of a text.

4.1 Text Division Elements

The body of a prose text may be just a series of paragraphs, or these paragraphs may be grouped together into chapters, sections, subsections, etc. Each paragraph is tagged using the <p> tag. The <div> element is used to represent any such grouping of paragraphs.

(paragraph) marks paragraphs in prose.

(text division) contains a subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text.

The type attribute on the <div> element may be used to supply a conventional name for this category of text division, or otherwise distinguish them. Typical values might be book, chapter, section, part, poem, song, etc. For a given project, it will usually be advisable to define and adhere to a specific list of such values.

A <div> element may itself contain further, nested, <div>s, thus mimicking the traditional structure of a book, which can be decomposed hierarchically into units such as parts, containing chapters, containing sections, and so on. TEI texts in general conform to this simple hierarchic model.

The xml:id attribute may be used to supply a unique identifier for the division, which may be used for cross references or other links to it, such as a commentary, as further discussed in section 8. Cross References and Links. It is often useful to provide an xml:id attribute for every major structural unit in a text, and to derive its values in some systematic way, for example by appending a section number to a short code for the title of the work in question, as in the examples below. It is particularly useful to supply such identifiers if the resource concerned is to be made available over the web, since they make it much easier for other web-based applications to link directly to the corresponding parts of your text.

The n attribute may be used to supply (additionally or alternatively) a short mnemonic name or number for a division, or any other element. If a conventional form of reference or
abbreviation for the parts of a work already exists (such as the book/chapter/verse pattern of Biblical citations), the n attribute is the place to record it; unlike the identifier supplied by xml:id, it does not need to be unique.

The xml:lang attribute may be used to specify the language of the division. Languages are identified by an internationally defined code, as further discussed in section 6.3. Foreign Words or Expressions below.

The rend attribute may be used to supply information about the rendition (appearance) of a division, or any other element, as further discussed in section 6. Marking Highlighted Phrases below. As with the type attribute, a project will often find it useful to predefine the possible values for this attribute, but TEI Lite does not constrain it in anyway.

These four attributes, xml:id, n, xml:lang, and rend are so widely useful that they are allowed on any element in any TEI schema: they are global attributes. Other global attributes defined in the TEI Lite scheme are discussed in section 8.3. Special kinds of Linking.

The value of every xml:id attribute should be unique within a document. One simple way of ensuring that this is so is to make it reflect the hierarchic structure of the document. For example, Smith’s Wealth of Nations as first published consists of five books, each of which is divided into chapters, while some chapters are further subdivided into parts. We might define xml:id values for this structure as follows:

```
<body>
  <div xml:id="WN1" n="I" type="book">
    <div xml:id="WN101" n="I.1" type="chapter">
      <!-- ... -->
    </div>
    <div xml:id="WN102" n="I.2" type="chapter">
      <!-- ... -->
    </div>
  </div>
  <div xml:id="WN110" n="I.10" type="chapter">
    <div xml:id="WN1101" n="I.10.1" type="part">
      <!-- ... -->
    </div>
    <div xml:id="WN1102" n="I.10.2" type="part">
      <!-- ... -->
    </div>
  </div>
  <div xml:id="WN2" n="II" type="book">
    <!-- ... -->
  </div>
</body>
```

A different numbering scheme may be used for xml:id and n attributes: this is often useful where a canonical reference scheme is used which does not tally with the structure of the work. For example, in a novel divided into books each containing chapters, where the chapters are numbered sequentially through the whole work, rather than within each book, one might use a scheme such as the following:

```
<body>
  <div xml:id="TS01" n="1" type="volume">
    <div xml:id="TS011" n="1" type="chapter">
      <!-- ... -->
    </div>
  </div>
  <div xml:id="TS012" n="2" type="chapter">
    <!-- ... -->
  </div>
</body>
```
Here the work has two volumes, each containing two chapters. The chapters are numbered conventionally 1 to 4, but the \texttt{xml:id} values specified allow them to be regarded additionally as if they were numbered 1.1, 1.2, 2.1, 2.2.

### 4.2 Headings and Closings

Every \texttt{<div>} may have a title or heading at its start, and (less commonly) a trailer such as \texttt{End of Chapter 1} at its end. The following elements may be used to transcribe them:

- \texttt{<head>}: (heading) contains any type of heading, for example the title of a section, or the heading of a list, glossary, manuscript description, etc.
- \texttt{<trailer>}: contains a closing title or footer appearing at the end of a division of a text.

Some other elements which may be necessary at the beginning or ending of text divisions are discussed below in section 18.1.2. Prefatory Matter.

Whether or not headings and trailers are included in a transcription is a matter for the individual transcriber to decide. Where a heading is completely regular (for example Chapter 1) or may be automatically constructed from attribute values (e.g. \texttt{<div type=\textquotedbl{}chapter\textquotedbl{} n=\texttt{\textquotedbl{}1\textquotedbl{}}>}), it may be omitted; where it contains otherwise unrecoverable text it should always be included. For example, the start of Hardy’s \textit{Under the Greenwood Tree} might be encoded as follows:

\begin{verbatim}
<div xml:id=\texttt{UGT1\texttt{\textunderscore{}\textunderscore{}Winter\textunderscore{}Part}} n=\texttt{\textquoteright{}Winter\textquoteright{}} type=\texttt{Part}>
  ... 
</div>
<div xml:id=\texttt{UGT1\texttt{\textunderscore{}\textunderscore{}1\textunderscore{}Chapter}} n=\texttt{\textquoteright{}1\textquoteright{}} type=\texttt{Chapter}>
  <head>Mellstock-Lane</head>
  <p>To dwellers in a wood almost every species of tree ...</p>
</div>
\end{verbatim}

### 4.3 Prose, Verse and Drama

As in the Bronte example above, the paragraphs making up a textual division are tagged with the \texttt{<p>} tag. In poetic or dramatic texts different tags are needed, to represent verse lines and stanzas in the first case, or individual speeches and stage directions in the second.:

- \texttt{<l>}: (verse line) contains a single, possibly incomplete, line of verse.
- \texttt{<lg>}: (line group) contains one or more verse lines functioning as a formal unit, e.g. a stanza, refrain, verse paragraph, etc.
- \texttt{<sp>}: (speech) contains an individual speech in a performance text, or a passage presented as such in a prose or verse text.
- \texttt{<speaker>}: contains a specialized form of heading or label, giving the name of one or more speakers in a dramatic text or fragment.
<stage> (stage direction) contains any kind of stage direction within a dramatic text or fragment.
Here, for example, is the start of a poetic text in which verse lines and stanzas are tagged:

```
<lg n="I">
<l>I Sing the progresse of a deathlesse soule, </l>
<l>Whom Fate, with God made, but doth not controule, </l>
<l>Plac'd in most shapes; all times before the law </l>
<l>Yoak'd us, and when, and since, in this I sing. </l>
<l>And the great world to his aged evening;</l>
<l>From infant morne, through manly noone I draw. </l>
<l>What the gold Chaldee, of silver Persian saw, </l>
<l>Greeke brass, or Roman iron, is in this one;</l>
<l>A worke t'out weare Seths pillars, bricke and stone,</l>
<l>And (holy writs excepted) made to yeeld to none, </l>
</lg>
```

Note that the <lg> element marks verse lines, not typographic lines: the original lineation of the first few lines above has not therefore been made explicit by this encoding, and may be lost. The <lb> element described in section 5. Page and Line Numbers might additionally be used to mark typographic lines if so desired.

Here is the end of a famous dramatic text, in which speeches and stage directions are marked:

```
<sp>
<speaker>Vladimir</speaker>
<p>Pull on your trousers.</p>
</sp>
<sp>
<speaker>Estragon</speaker>
<p>You want me to pull off my trousers?</p>
</sp>
<sp>
<speaker>Vladimir</speaker>
<p>Pull <emph>on</emph> your trousers.</p>
</sp>
<sp>
<speaker>Vladimir</speaker>
<p>(realizing his trousers are down)</p>
</sp>
<stage>He pulls up his trousers</stage>
<sp>
<speaker>Vladimir</speaker>
<p>Well? Shall we go?</p>
</sp>
<sp>
<speaker>Estragon</speaker>
<p>Yes, let's go.</p>
</sp>
<stage>They do not move.</stage>
```

Note that the <stage> (stage direction) element can appear either within a speech or between speeches. The <sp> ("speech") element contains, following an optional <speaker> element
indicating who is speaking, either paragraphs (if the speech is in prose) or verse lines or stanzas as in the next example. In this case, it is quite common to find that verse lines are split between speakers. The easiest way of encoding this is to use the part attribute to indicate that the lines so fragmented are incomplete:

```xml
<div type="Act" n="I">
  <head>ACT I</head>
  <div type="Scene" n="1">
    <head>SCENE I</head>
    <stage rend="italic"> Enter Barnardo and Francisco, two Sentinels, at several doors</stage>
    <sp>
      <speaker>Barn</speaker>
      <l part="Y">Who's there?</l>
    </sp>
    <sp>
      <speaker>Francisco</speaker>
      <l>Nay, answer me. Stand and unfold yourself.</l>
    </sp>
    <sp>
      <speaker>Barnardo</speaker>
      <l>Long live the King!</l>
    </sp>
    <sp>
      <speaker>Barnardo</speaker>
      <l>Barnardo?</l>
    </sp>
    <sp>
      <speaker>Barnardo</speaker>
      <l>He.</l>
    </sp>
    <sp>
      <speaker>Francisco</speaker>
      <l>You come most carefully upon your hour.</l>
    </sp>
  </div>
</div>
```

The same mechanism may be applied to stanzas which are divided between two speakers:

```xml
<sp>
  <speaker>First voice</speaker>
  <lg type="stanza" part="I">
    <l>But why drives on that ship so fast</l>
    <l>Withouten wave or wind?</l>
  </lg>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>Second Voice</speaker>
  <lg part="F">
    <l>The air is cut away before.</l>
    <l>And closes from behind.</l>
  </lg>
</sp>
```
The `<sp>` element can also be used for dialogue presented in a prose work as if it were drama, as in the next example, which also demonstrates the use of the `who` attribute to bear a code identifying the speaker of the piece of dialogue concerned:

```
<div>
  <sp who="#OPI">
    <speaker>The reverend Doctor Opimian</speaker>
    <p>I do not think I have named a single unpresentable fish.</p>
  </sp>

  <sp who="#GRM">
    <speaker>Mr Gryll</speaker>
    <p>Bream, Doctor: there is not much to be said for bream.</p>
  </sp>

  <sp who="#OPI">
    <speaker>The Reverend Doctor Opimian</speaker>
    <p>On the contrary, sir, I think there is much to be said for him. In the first place....</p>
    <p>Fish, Miss Gryll -- I could discourse to you on fish by the hour: but for the present I will forbear.</p>
  </sp>
</div>
```

Here the `who` attribute values (#OPI etc.) are links, pointing to a list of the characters in the novel, each of which has an identifier:

```
<List>
  <head>Characters in the novel</head>
  <item xml:id="OPI">
    <name>Dr Opimian</name> : named for the famous Roman fine wine
  </item>
  <item xml:id="GRM">
    <name>Mr Gryll</name> : named for the mythical Gryllus, one of Ulysses' sailors transformed by Circe into a pig, who argues that he was happier in that state than as a man
  </item>
</List>
```

5 Page and Line Numbers

Page and line breaks etc. may be marked with the following elements.

- `<pb>` (page beginning) marks the beginning of a new page in a paginated document.
- `<lb>` (line beginning) marks the beginning of a new (typographic) line in some edition or version of a text.
- `<milestone>` (milestone) marks a boundary point separating any kind of section of a text, typically but not necessarily indicating a point at which some part of a standard reference system changes, where the change is not represented by a structural element.

These elements mark a single point in the text, not a span of text. The global `n` attribute should be used to supply the number of the page or line beginning at the tag.

When working from a paginated original, it is often useful to record its pagination, if only to simplify later proof-reading. It is also useful for synchronizing an encoded text with a set of page images. Recording the line breaks may be useful for similar reasons.

If features such as pagination or lineation are marked for more than one edition, specify the edition in question using the `ed` attribute, and supply as many tags as necessary. For example, in the following passage we indicate where the page breaks occur in two different editions (ED1 and ED2)
A special attribute break may be used to indicate whether or not this empty element is considered as a word-breaking, irrespective of any adjacent whitespace. For example, in the following encoded sample:

The <pb> and <lb> elements are special cases of the general class of milestone elements which mark reference points within a text. The generic <milestone> element can mark any kind of reference point: for example, a column break, the start of a new kind of section not otherwise tagged, or in general any significant change in the text not marked by an XML element. The names used for types of unit and for editions referred to by the ed and unit attributes may be chosen freely, but should be documented in the header <refsDecl> element (see 19.2.3, Reference and Classification Declarations). The <milestone> element may be used to replace the others, or the others may be used as a set; they should not be mixed arbitrarily.

6 Marking Highlighted Phrases

6.1 Changes of Typeface, etc.

Highlighted words or phrases are those made visibly different from the rest of the text, typically by a change of type font, handwriting style, ink colour etc., which is intended to draw the reader’s attention to some associated change.

The global rend attribute can be attached to any element, and used wherever necessary to specify details of the highlighting used for it in the source. For example, a heading rendered in bold might be tagged <head rend="bold">, and one in italic <head rend="italic">. The values to be used for the rend attribute are not specified by the TEI Guidelines, since they will depend entirely on the needs of the particular project. Some typical values might include italic, bold etc. for font variations; center, right etc. for alignment; large, small etc. for size; smallcaps, allcaps etc. for type variants and so on. Several such words may be used in combination as necessary, but no formal syntax is proposed. The full TEI Guidelines provide more rigorous mechanisms, using other W3C standards such as CSS, as an alternative to the use of rend.

It is not always possible or desirable to interpret the reasons for such changes of rendering in a text. In such cases, the element <hi> may be used to mark a sequence of highlighted text without making any claim as to its status. <hi> (highlighted) marks a word or phrase as graphically distinct from the surrounding text, for reasons concerning which no claim is made.

In the following example, the use of a distinct typeface for the subheading and for the included name are recorded but not interpreted:

<hi rend="gothic">And this Indenture further witnesseth</hi> that the said <hi rend="italic">Walter Shandy</hi>, merchant, in consideration of the said intended marriage ...

Alternatively, where the cause for the highlighting can be identified with confidence, a number of other, more specific, elements are available.
MARKING HIGHLIGHTED PHRASES

<emph> (emphasized) marks words or phrases which are stressed or emphasized for linguistic or rhetorical effect.

<foreign> (foreign) identifies a word or phrase as belonging to some language other than that of the surrounding text.

<gloss> (gloss) identifies a phrase or word used to provide a gloss or definition for some other word or phrase.

<label> (label) contains any label or heading used to identify part of a text, typically but not exclusively in a list or glossary.

<mentioned> marks words or phrases mentioned, not used.

<term> (term) contains a single-word, multi-word, or symbolic designation which is regarded as a technical term.

<title> (title) contains a title for any kind of work.
Some features (notably quotations and glosses) may be found in a text either marked by highlighting, or with quotation marks. In either case, the elements <q> and <gloss> (as discussed in the following section) should be used. If the highlighting is to be recorded, use the global rend attribute.

As an example of the elements defined here, consider the following sentence:

On the one hand the Nibelungenlied is associated with the new rise of romance of twelfth-century France, the romans d’antiquité, the romances of Chrétien de Troyes, and the German adaptations of these works by Heinrich van Veldeke, Hartmann von Aue, and Wolfram von Eschenbach.

Interpreting the role of the highlighting, the sentence might look like this:

<p>On the one hand the <title>Nibelungenlied</title> is associated with the new rise of romance of twelfth-century France, the <foreign>romans d’antiquité</foreign>, the romances of Chrétien de Troyes, ...</p>

Describing only the appearance of the original, it might look like this:

<p>On the one hand the <hi rend="italic">Nibelungenlied</hi> is associated with the new rise of romance of twelfth-century France, the <hi rend="italic">romans d’antiquité</hi>, the romances of Chrétien de Troyes, ...</p>

6.2 Quotations and Related Features

Like changes of typeface, quotation marks are conventionally used to denote several different features within a text, of which the most frequent is quotation. When possible, we recommend that the underlying feature be tagged, rather than the simple fact that quotation marks appear in the text, using the following elements:

<q> (quoted) contains material which is distinguished from the surrounding text using quotation marks or a similar method, for any one of a variety of reasons including, but not limited to: direct speech or thought, technical terms or jargon, authorial distance, quotations from elsewhere, and passages that are mentioned but not used.

<mentioned> marks words or phrases mentioned, not used.

<soCalled> (so called) contains a word or phrase for which the author or narrator indicates a disclaiming of responsibility, for example by the use of scare quotes or italics.
<gloss> (gloss) identifies a phrase or word used to provide a gloss or definition for some other word or phrase.

Here is a simple example of a quotation:

```xml
<p>Few dictionary makers are likely to forget Dr. Johnson's description of the lexicographer as <q>a harmless drudge.</q></p>
```

To record how a quotation was printed (for example, in-line or set off as a display or block quotation), the rend attribute should be used. This may also be used to indicate the kind of quotation marks used.

Direct speech interrupted by a narrator can be represented simply by ending the quotation and beginning it again after the interruption, as in the following example:

```xml
<p>
 <q>Who-e debel you?</q> — he at last said —
 <q>you no speak-e, damme, I kill-e.</q> And so saying, the lighted tomahawk began flourishing about me in the dark.
</p>
```

If it is important to convey the idea that the two <q> elements together make up a single speech, the linking attributes next and prev may be used, as described in section 8.3. Special kinds of Linking.

Quotations may be accompanied by a reference to the source or speaker, using the who attribute, whether or not this is explicit in the text, as in the following example:

```xml
<q who="#Wilson">Spaulding, he came down into the office just this day eight weeks with this very paper in his hand, and he says:—<q who="#Spaulding">I wish to the Lord, Mr. Wilson, that I was a red-headed man.</q></q>
```

This example also demonstrates how quotations may be embedded within other quotations: one speaker (Wilson) quotes another speaker (Spaulding).

The creator of the electronic text must decide whether quotation marks are replaced by the tags or whether the tags are added and the quotation marks kept. If the quotation marks are removed from the text, the rend attribute may be used to record the way in which they were rendered in the copy text.

The full TEI Guidelines provide additional elements to distinguish direct speech, quotation, and other typical uses of quotation mark although it is not always possible and may not be considered desirable to interpret the function of quotation marks in a text. For simplicity, only <q> (which may be used for any such case) has been included in TEI Lite.

### 6.3 Foreign Words or Expressions

Words or phrases which are not in the main language of the texts may be tagged as such in one of two ways. If the word or phrase is already tagged for some reason, the element indicated should bear a value for the global xml:lang attribute indicating the language used. Where there is no applicable element, the element <foreign> may be used, again using the xml:lang attribute. For example:
As these examples show, the \texttt{<foreign>} element should not be used to tag foreign words if some other more specific element such as \texttt{<title>}, \texttt{<mentioned>}, or \texttt{<term>} applies. The global \texttt{xml:lang} attribute may be attached to any element to show that it uses some other language than that of the surrounding text.

The codes used to identify languages, supplied on the \texttt{xml:lang} attribute, must be constructed in a particular way, and must conform to common Internet standards\textsuperscript{2}, as further explained in the relevant section of the TEI Guidelines. Some simple example codes for a few languages are given here:

\begin{verbatim}
 zh Chinese
 en English
 enm Middle English
 fr French
 de German
 grc Ancient Greek
 el Greek
 ja Japanese
 la Latin
 sa Sanskrit
\end{verbatim}

\section{Notes}

All notes, whether printed as footnotes, endnotes, marginalia, or elsewhere, should be marked using the same element:
\begin{verbatim}
 <note> contains a note or annotation.
\end{verbatim}

Where possible, the body of a note should be inserted in the text at the point at which its identifier or mark first appears. This may not be possible for example with marginalia, which may not be anchored to an exact location. For simplicity, it may be adequate to position marginal notes before the relevant paragraph or other element. Notes may also be placed in a separate division of the text (as end-notes are, in printed books) and linked to the relevant portion of the text using their \texttt{target} attribute.

The \texttt{n} attribute may be used to supply the number or identifier of a note if this is required. The \texttt{resp} attribute should be used consistently to distinguish between authorial and editorial notes, if the work has both kinds.

Examples:

\begin{verbatim}
 Collections are ensembles of distinct entities or objects of any sort. \texttt{<note \texttt{place="foot" n="1"}> We explain below why we use the uncommon term \texttt{<mentioned>collection</mentioned>} instead of the expected \texttt{<mentioned>set</mentioned>}. Our usage corresponds to the \texttt{<mentioned>aggregate</mentioned>} of many mathematical writings and to the sense of \texttt{<mentioned>class</mentioned>} found in older logical writings. \texttt{</note> The elements ...</p>
\end{verbatim}

\textsuperscript{2}The relevant standard is \textit{Best Current Practice 47} (http://tools.ietf.org/html/bcp47). The authoritative list of registered subtags is maintained by IANA and is available at http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry. For a general overview of the construction of language tags, see http://www.w3.org/International/articles/language-tags/, and for a practical step-by-step guide, see http://www.w3.org/International/questions/qa-choosing-language-tags.
The curse is finally expiated
And now this spell was snapt: once more
I viewed the ocean green,
And looked far forth, yet little saw
Of what had else been seen

8 Cross References and Links
Explicit cross references or links from one point in a text to another in the same or another document may be encoded using the elements described in this section. Implicit links (such as the association between two parallel texts, or that between a text and its interpretation) may be encoded using the linking attributes discussed in section 8.3. Special kinds of Linking.

8.1 Simple Cross References
A cross reference from one point within a single document to another can be encoded using either of the following elements:

- `<ref>` (reference) defines a reference to another location, possibly modified by additional text or comment.
- `<ptr>` (pointer) defines a pointer to another location.

The difference between these two elements is that `<ptr>` is an empty element, simply marking a point from which a link is to be made, whereas `<ref>` may contain some text as well, typically identifying the target of the cross reference. The `<ptr>` element would be used for a cross reference which is to be indicated by some non-verbal means such as a symbol or icon, or in an electronic text by a button. It is also useful in document production systems, where the formatter can generate the correct verbal form of the cross reference.

The following two forms, for example, are logically equivalent:

See especially `<ref target="#SEC12">section 12 on page 34</ref>`.

See especially `<ptr target="#SEC12"/>`.

The value of the `target` attribute on either element may be the identifier of some other element within the current document. The passage or phrase being pointed at must bear an identifier, and must therefore be tagged as an element of some kind. In the following example, the cross reference is to a `<div>` element:

... see especially `<ptr target="#SEC12"/>`. ...

Because the `xml:id` attribute is global, any element in a TEI document may be pointed to in this way. In the following example, a paragraph has been given an identifier so that it may be pointed at:
Sometimes the target of a cross reference does not correspond with any particular feature of a text, and so may not be tagged as an element of some kind. If the desired target is simply a point in the current document, the easiest way to mark it is by introducing an `<anchor>` element at the appropriate spot. If the target is some sequence of words not otherwise tagged, the `<seg>` element may be introduced to mark them. These two elements are described as follows:

- `<anchor>` (anchor point) attaches an identifier to a point within a text, whether or not it corresponds with a textual element.
- `<seg>` (arbitrary segment) represents any segmentation of text below the chunk level.

In the following (imaginary) example, `<ref>` elements have been used to represent points in this text which are to be linked in some way to other parts of it; in the first case to a point, and in the second, to a sequence of words:

```
Returning to `<ref target="#ABCD"`>the point where I dozed off</ref>, I noticed that `<ref target="#EFGH">three words</ref>` had been circled in red by a previous reader.
```

This encoding requires that elements with the specified identifiers (ABCD and EFGH in this example) are to be found somewhere else in the current document. Assuming that no element already exists to carry these identifiers, the `<anchor>` and `<seg>` elements may be used:

```
.... <anchor type="bookmark" xml:id="ABCD"/> .... ....<seg type="target" xml:id="EFGH">
...
</seg> ...
```

The `type` attribute should be used (as above) to distinguish amongst different purposes for which these general purpose elements might be used in a text. Some other uses are discussed in section 8.3. Special kinds of Linking below.

### 8.2 Pointing to other documents

So far, we have shown how the elements `<ptr>` and `<ref>` may be used for cross-references or links whose targets occur within the same document as their source. However, the same elements may also be used to refer to elements in any other XML document or resource, such as a document on the web, or a database component. This is possible because the value of the `target` attribute may be any valid universal resource indicator (URI). [Note: A full definition of this term, defined by the W3C (the consortium which manages the development and maintenance of the World Wide Web), is beyond the scope of this tutorial; however, the most frequently encountered version of a URI is the familiar URL used to indicate a web page, such as `http://www.tei-c.org/index.xml`].

A URI may reference a web page or just a part of one, for example `http://www.tei-c.org/index.xml#SEC2`. The sharp sign indicates that what follows it is the identifier of an element to be located within the XML document identified by what precedes it: this example will therefore locate an element which has an `xml:id` attribute value of SEC2 within the document retrieved from `http://www.tei-c.org/index.xml`. In the examples we have discussed so far, the part to the left of the sharp sign has been omitted:
this is understood to mean that the referenced element is to be located within the current document.

Parts of an XML document can be specified by means of other more sophisticated mechanisms using a special language called Xpath, also defined by the W3C. This is particularly useful where the elements to be linked to do not bear identifiers and must therefore be located by some other means.

8.3 Special kinds of Linking

The following special purpose linking attributes are defined for every element in the TEI Lite scheme:

*ana* links an element with its interpretation.

*corresp* links an element with one or more other corresponding elements.

*next* links an element to the next element in an aggregate.

*prev* links an element to the previous element in an aggregate.

The *ana* (analysis) attribute is intended for use where a set of abstract analyses or interpretations have been defined somewhere within a document, as further discussed in section 15. Interpretation and Analysis. For example, a linguistic analysis of the sentence John loves Nancy might be encoded as follows:

```xml
<seg type="sentence" ana="SVO">
  <seg type="lex" ana="#NP1">John</seg>
  <seg type="lex" ana="#VVI">loves</seg>
  <seg type="lex" ana="#NP1">Nancy</seg>
</seg>
```

This encoding implies the existence elsewhere in the document of elements with identifiers SVO, NP1, and VV1 where the significance of these particular codes is explained. Note the use of the `<seg>` element to mark particular components of the analysis, distinguished by the *type* attribute.

The *corresp* (corresponding) attribute provides a simple way of representing some form of correspondence between two elements in a text. For example, in a multilingual text, it may be used to link translation equivalents, as in the following example.

```xml
<seg xml:lang="fr" xml:id="FR1" corresp="#EN1">Jean aime Nancy</seg>
<seg xml:lang="en" xml:id="EN1" corresp="#FR1">John loves Nancy</seg>
```

The same mechanism may be used for a variety of purposes. In the following example, it has been used to represent the correspondences between the show and Shirley, and between NBC and the network:

```xml
<p>
  <title xml:id="shirley">Shirley</title>, which made its Friday night debut only a month ago, was not listed on <name xml:id="nbc">NBC</name>'s new schedule, although <seg xml:id="network" corresp="#nbc">the network</seg>
</p>
```
says <seg xml:id="show" corresp="#shirley">the show</seg> still is being considered.
</p>

The next and prev attributes provide a simple way of linking together the components of a discontinuous element, as in the following example:

<q xml:id="Q1a" next="#Q1b">Who-e debel you?</q> — he at last said — <q xml:id="Q1b" prev="#Q1a">you no speak-e, damme, I kill-e.</q>
And so saying, the lighted tomahawk began flourishing about me in the dark.

9 Editorial Interventions

The process of encoding an electronic text has much in common with the process of editing a manuscript or other text for printed publication. In either case a conscientious editor may wish to record both the original state of the source and any editorial correction or other change made in it. The elements discussed in this and the next section provide some facilities for meeting these needs.

9.1 Correction and Normalization

The following elements may be used to mark correction, that is editorial changes introduced where the editor believes the original to be erroneous:

<corr> (correction) contains the correct form of a passage apparently erroneous in the copy text.

<sic> (Latin for thus or so) contains text reproduced although apparently incorrect or inaccurate.

The following elements may be used to mark normalization, that is editorial changes introduced for the sake of consistency or modernization of a text:

<orig> (original form) contains a reading which is marked as following the original, rather than being normalized or corrected.

<reg> (regularization) contains a reading which has been regularized or normalized in some sense.

As an example, consider this extract from the quarto printing of Shakespeare’s Henry V.

... for his nose was as sharp as a pen and a table of green feelds

A modern editor might wish to make a number of interventions here, specifically to modernize (or normalise) the Elizabethan spellings of a’ and feelds for he and fields respectively. He or she might also want to emend table to babbl’d, following an editorial tradition that goes back to the 18th century Shakespearian scholar Lewis Theobald. The following encoding would then be appropriate:

... for his nose was as sharp as a pen and <reg>he</reg>
<corr resp="#Theobald">babbl’d</corr> of green
<reg>fields</reg>

A more conservative or source-oriented editor, however, might want to retain the original, but at the same time signal that some of the readings it contains are in some sense anomalous:
9.2 Omissions, Deletions, and Additions

In addition to correcting or normalizing words and phrases, editors and transcribers may also supply missing material, omit material, or transcribe material deleted or crossed out in the source. In addition, some material may be particularly hard to transcribe because it is hard to make out on the page. The following elements may be used to record such phenomena:

- `<add>` (addition) contains letters, words, or phrases inserted in the source text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector.
- `<gap>` (gap) indicates a point where material has been omitted in a transcription, whether for editorial reasons described in the TEI header, as part of sampling practice, or because the material is illegible, invisible, or inaudible.
- `<del>` (deletion) contains a letter, word, or passage deleted, marked as deleted, or otherwise indicated as superfluous or spurious in the copy text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector.
- `<unclear>` (unclear) contains a word, phrase, or passage which cannot be transcribed with certainty because it is illegible or inaudible in the source.

These elements may be used to record changes made by an editor, by the transcriber, or (in manuscript material) by the author or scribe. For example, if the source for an electronic text read The following elements are provided for simple editorial interventions, then it might be felt desirable to correct the obvious error, but at the same time to record the deletion of the superfluous second `for`, thus:

```
The following elements are provided for `<del resp="#LB">for</del>` simple editorial interventions.
```

The attribute value `#LB` on the `resp` attribute is used to point to a fuller definition (typically in a `<respStmt>` element) for the agency responsible for correcting the duplication of `for`.

If the source read The following elements provided for simple editorial interventions. (i.e. if the verb had been inadvertently dropped) then the corrected text might read:
The following elements `<add resp="#LB">are</add>` provided for simple editorial interventions.

These elements are also used to record authorial changes in manuscripts. A manuscript in which the author has first written How it galls me, what a galling shadow, then crossed out the word *galls* and inserted *dogs* might be encoded thus:

```
How it <del hand="#DHL" type="overstrike">galls</del>
<add hand="#DHL" place="supralinear">dogs</add> me, what a galling shadow
```

Again, the code #DHL points to another location where more information about the hand concerned is to be found\(^3\).

Similarly, the `<unclear>` and `<gap>` elements may be used together to indicate the omission of illegible material; the following example also shows the use of `<add>` for a conjectural emendation:

```
One hundred & twenty good regulars joined to me `<unclear>
<gap reason="indecipherable"/>
</unclear>
& instantly, would aid me signally `<add hand="#ed">in?</add>` an enterprise against Wilmington.
```

The `<del>` element marks material which has been transcribed as part of the electronic text despite being marked as deleted, while `<gap>` marks the location of material which is omitted from the electronic text, whether it is legible or not. A language corpus, for example, might omit long quotations in foreign languages:

```
<p>... An example of a list appearing in a fief ledger of <name type="place">Koldinghus</name>
<date>1611/12</date> is given below. It shows cash income from a sale of honey.</p>
<gap>
<desc>quotation from ledger (in Danish)</desc>
</gap>
<p>A description of the overall structure of the account is once again ...</p>
```

Other corpora (particular those constructed before the widespread use of scanners) systematically omit figures and mathematics:

```
<p>At the bottom of your screen below the mode line is the <term>minibuffer</term>. This is the area where Emacs echoes the commands you enter and where you specify filenames for Emacs to find, values for search and replace, and so on. <gap reason="graphic">
<desc>diagram of Emacs screen</desc>
</gap>
</p>
```

\(^3\)The full TEI provides a range of elements for encoding metadata about manuscript production and description, which are not however included in TEI Lite
The full TEI scheme provides more precise ways of capturing different aspects of a transcription, distinguishing for example between text added or supplied by the encoder and text indicated as supplied or deleted in the source. TEI Lite does not provide different tags for these purposes.

### 9.3 Abbreviations and their Expansion

Like names, dates, and numbers, abbreviations may be transcribed as they stand or expanded; they may be left unmarked, or encoded using the following elements:

- `<abbr>` (abbreviation) contains an abbreviation of any sort.
- `<expan>` (expansion) contains the expansion of an abbreviation.

The `<abbr>` element is useful as a means of distinguishing semi-lexical items such as acronyms or jargon:

We can sum up the above discussion as follows: the identity of a `<abbr>`CC`/`<abbr>` is defined by that calibration of values which motivates the elements of its `<abbr>`GSP`/`<abbr>`;

Every manufacturer of `<abbr>`3GL`/`<abbr>` or `<abbr>`4GL`/`<abbr>` languages is currently nailing on `<abbr>`OOP`/`<abbr>` extensions.

The *type* attribute may be used to distinguish types of abbreviation by their function.

The `<expan>` element is used to mark an expansion supplied by an encoder. This element is particularly useful in the transcription of manuscript materials. For example, the character p with a bar through its descender as a conventional representation for the word per is commonly encountered in Medieval European manuscripts. An encoder may choose to expand this as follows:

```xml
<expan>per</expan>
```

The expansion corresponding with an abbreviated form may not always contain the same letters as the abbreviation. Where it does, however, common editorial practice is to italicize or otherwise signal which letters have been supplied. The `<expan>` element should not be used for this purpose since its function is to indicate an expanded form, not a part of one. For example, consider the common abbreviation `wt` (for with) found in medieval texts. In a modern edition, an editor might wish to represent this as `wihith`, italicising the letters not found in the source. One simple means of achieving that would be an encoding such as the follow:

```xml
<expan><hi rend="it">i</hi>t<hi rend="it">h</hi></expan>
```

The full TEI also provides elements `<ex>` and `<am>` for use in this situation, but these are not included in the TEI Lite schema.

To record both an abbreviation and its expansion, the `<choice>` element mentioned above may be used to group the abbreviated form with its proposed expansion:

```xml
<choice>
<abbr>wt</abbr>
<expan>with</expan>
</choice>
```
10 Names, Dates, and Numbers

The TEI scheme defines elements for a large number of data-like features which may appear almost anywhere within almost any kind of text. These features may be of particular interest in a range of disciplines; they all relate to objects external to the text itself, such as the names of persons and places, numbers and dates. They also pose particular problems for many natural language processing (NLP) applications because of the variety of ways in which they may be presented within a text. The elements described here, by making such features explicit, reduce the complexity of processing texts containing them.

10.1 Names and Referring Strings

A referring string is a phrase which refers to some person, place, object, etc. Two elements are provided to mark such strings:

- `<rs>` (referring string) contains a general purpose name or referring string.
- `<name>` (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase.

The type attribute is used to distinguish amongst (for example) names of persons, places and organizations, where this is possible:

```xml
&q>My dear <rs type="person">Mr. Bennet</rs>, </q>
said his lady to him one day,
&<q>have you heard that <rs type="place">Netherfield Park</rs>
is let at last?&</q>
```

It being one of the principles of the `<rs type="organization">Circumlocution Office</rs> never, on any account whatsoever, to give a straightforward answer, `<rs type="person">Mr Barnacle</rs> said,

```xml
&q>Possibly.</q>
```

As the following example shows, the `<rs>` element may be used for any reference to a person, place, etc, not necessarily one in the form of a proper noun or noun phrase.

```xml
&q>My dear <rs type="person">Mr. Bennet</rs>, </q>
said <rs type="person">his lady</rs> to him one day...
```

The `<name>` element by contrast is provided for the special case of referring strings which consist only of proper nouns; it may be used synonymously with the `<rs>` element, or nested within it if a referring string contains a mixture of common and proper nouns.

Simply tagging something as a name is rarely enough to enable automatic processing of personal names into the canonical forms usually required for reference purposes. The name as it appears in the text may be inconsistently spelled, partial, or vague. Moreover, name prefixes such as van or de la, may or may not be included as part of the reference form of a name, depending on the language and country of origin of the bearer.

The key attribute provides an alternative normalized identifier for the object being named, like a database record key. It may thus be useful as a means of gathering together all references to the same individual or location scattered throughout a document:

```xml
&q>My dear <rs type="person" key="BENM1">Mr. Bennet</rs>, </q>
said <rs type="person" key="BENM2">his lady</rs> to him one day,
&<q>have you heard that <rs type="place" key="NETP1">Netherfield Park</rs> is let at last?&</q>
```
This use should be distinguished from the case of the `<reg>` (regularization) element, which provides a means of marking the standard form of a referencing string as demonstrated below:

```
<name type="person" key="WADLM1">
  <choice>
    <sic>Walter de la Mare</sic>
    <reg>de la Mare, Walter</reg>
  </choice>
</name>

was born at <name key="Ch1" type="place">Charlton</name>, in <name key="KT1" type="county">Kent</name> in 1873.
```

The `<index>` element discussed in indexing may be more appropriate if the function of the regularization is to provide a consistent index:

```
<p>
  <name type="place">Montaillou</name> is not a large parish. At the time of the events which led to <name type="person">Fournier</name>’s <index>
    <term>Benedict XII, Pope of Avignon (Jacques Fournier)</term>
  </index> investigations, the local population consisted of between 200 and 250 inhabitants.
</p>
```

Although adequate for many simple applications, these methods have two inconveniences: if the name occurs many times, then its regularised form must be repeated many times; and the burden of additional XML markup in the body of the text may be inconvenient to maintain and complex to process. For applications such as onomastics, relating to persons or places named rather than the name itself, or wherever a detailed analysis of the component parts of a name is needed, the full TEI Guidelines provide a range of other solutions.

### 10.2 Dates and Times

Tags for the more detailed encoding of times and dates include the following:

- `<date>` (date) contains a date in any format.
- `<time>` (time) contains a phrase defining a time of day in any format.

These elements have a number of attributes which can be used to provide normalised versions of their values.

- `<att.datable>` provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dates, times, or datable events.
  - `<@period>` supplies pointers to one or more definitions of named periods of time (typically `<category>`s or `<calendar>`s) within which the datable item is understood to have occurred.
  - `<@when [att.datable.w3c]>` supplies the value of the date or time in a standard form, e.g. `yyyy-mm-dd`.

The `when` attribute specifies a normalized form for the date or time, using one of the standard formats defined by ISO 8601. Partial dates or times (e.g. 1990, September 1990, twelvish) can be expressed by omitting a part of the value supplied, as in the following examples:

```
<date when="1980-02-21">21 Feb 1980</date>
<date when="1990">1990</date>
```
11 Lists

The element `<list>` is used to mark any kind of list. A list is a sequence of text items, which may be numbered, bulleted, or arranged as a glossary list. Each item may be preceded by an item label (in a glossary list, this label is the term being defined):

- `<list>` (list) contains any sequence of items organized as a list.
- `<item>` (item) contains one component of a list.
- `<label>` (label) contains any label or heading used to identify part of a text, typically but not exclusively in a list or glossary.

Individual list items are tagged with `<item>`. The first `<item>` may optionally be preceded by a `<head>`, which gives a heading for the list. The numbering of a list may be omitted, indicated using the `n` attribute on each item, or (rarely) tagged as content using the `<label>` element. The following are all thus equivalent:

```
<list>
  <head>A short list</head>
```

10.3 Numbers

Numbers can be written with either letters or digits (`twenty-one`, `xxi`, and `21`) and their presentation is language-dependent (e.g. English `5th` becomes Greek `5.;` English `123,456.78` equals French `123.456,78`). In natural-language processing or machine-translation applications, it is often helpful to distinguish them from other, more lexical parts of the text. In other applications, the ability to record a number’s value in standard notation is important. The `<num>` element provides this possibility:

- `<num>` (number) contains a number, written in any form.

For example:

```
<num value="33">xxxiii</num>
<num type="cardinal" value="21">twenty-one</num>
<num type="percentage" value="10">ten percent</num>
<num type="percentage" value="10">10%</num>
<num type="ordinal" value="5">5th</num>
```
The styles should not be mixed in the same list.

A simple two-column table may be treated as a glossary list, tagged `<list type="gloss">`. Here, each item comprises a term and a gloss, marked with `<label>` and `<item>` respectively. These correspond to the elements `<term>` and `<gloss>`, which can occur anywhere in prose text.

Where the internal structure of a list item is more complex, it may be preferable to regard the list as a table, for which special-purpose tagging is defined below (13. Tables).

Lists of whatever kind can, of course, nest within list items to any depth required. Here, for example, a glossary list contains two items, each of which is itself a simple list:

```xml
<list type="gloss">
  <head>Vocabulary</head>
  <item xml:lang="en">nu</item>
  <item xml:lang="en">now</item>
  <item xml:lang="en">lhude</item>
  <item xml:lang="en">loudly</item>
  <item xml:lang="en">bloweth</item>
  <item xml:lang="en">blooms</item>
  <item xml:lang="en">med</item>
  <item xml:lang="en">meadow</item>
  <item xml:lang="en">wude</item>
  <item xml:lang="en">wood</item>
  <item xml:lang="en">awe</item>
  <item xml:lang="en">ewe</item>
  <item xml:lang="en">lhouth</item>
  <item xml:lang="en">lows</item>
  <item xml:lang="en">sterteth</item>
  <item xml:lang="en">bounds, frisks</item>
  <item xml:lang="en">verteth</item>
  <item xml:lang="en">pedit</item>
  <item xml:lang="en">murie</item>
  <item xml:lang="en">swik</item>
  <item xml:lang="en">cease</item>
  <item xml:lang="en">naver</item>
  <item xml:lang="en">never</item>
</list>
```
<list type="gloss">
  <label>EVIL</label>
  <item> <list type="simple">
    <item>I am cast upon a horrible desolate island, void of all hope of recovery.</item>
    <item>I am singled out and separated as it were from all the world to be miserable.</item>
    <item>I am divided from mankind — a solitaire; one banished from human society.</item>
  </list>
  </item>
</list>

<list type="simple">
  <item>But I am alive; and not drowned, as all my ship's company were.</item>
  <item>But I am singled out, too, from all the ship's crew, to be spared from death.</item>
  <item>But I am not starved, and perishing on a barren place, affording no sustenances.</item>
</list>

A list need not necessarily be displayed in list format. For example,

<p>On those remote pages it is written that animals are divided into <list rend="run-on">
  <item n="a">those that belong to the Emperor,</item>
  <item n="b"> embalmed ones, </item>
  <item n="c"> those that are trained, </item>
  <item n="d"> suckling pigs, </item>
  <item n="e"> mermaids, </item>
  <item n="f"> fabulouis ones, </item>
  <item n="g"> stray dogs, </item>
  <item n="h"> those that are included in this classification, </item>
  <item n="i"> those that tremble as if they were mad, </item>
  <item n="j"> innumerable ones, </item>
  <item n="k"> those drawn with a very fine camel's-hair brush, </item>
  <item n="l"> others, </item>
  <item n="m"> those that have just broken a flower vase, </item>
  <item n="n"> those that resemble flies from a distance.</item>
</list></p>

Lists of bibliographic items should be tagged using the <listBibl> element, described in the next section.

12 Bibliographic Citations

It is often useful to distinguish bibliographic citations where they occur within texts being transcribed for research, if only so that they will be properly formatted when the text is printed out. The element <bibl> is provided for this purpose. Where the components of a bibliographic reference are to be distinguished, the following elements may be used as appropriate. It is generally useful to mark at least those parts (such as the titles of articles, books, and journals) which will need special formatting. The other elements are provided for cases where particular interest attaches to such details.

<bibl> (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged.
<author> (author) in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of an author, personal or corporate, of a work; for example in the same form as that provided by a recognized bibliographic name authority.

<biblScope> (scope of bibliographic reference) defines the scope of a bibliographic reference, for example as a list of page numbers, or a named subdivision of a larger work.

<date> (date) contains a date in any format.

<editor> contains a secondary statement of responsibility for a bibliographic item, for example the name of an individual, institution or organization, (or of several such) acting as editor, compiler, translator, etc.

<publisher> (publisher) provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item.

<pubPlace> (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published.

<title> (title) contains a title for any kind of work.

For example, the following editorial note might be transcribed as shown:

He was a member of Parliament for Warwickshire in 1445, and died March 14, 1470 (according to Kittredge, Harvard Studies 5. 88ff).

For lists of bibliographic citations, the <listBibl> element should be used; it may contain a series of <bibl> elements.

13 Tables

Tables represent a challenge for any text processing system, but simple tables, at least, appear in so many texts that even in the simplified TEI tag set presented here, markup for tables is necessary. The following elements are provided for this purpose:

<table> (table) contains text displayed in tabular form, in rows and columns.

<row> (row) contains one row of a table.

<cell> (cell) contains one cell of a table.

For example, Defoe uses mortality tables like the following in the Journal of the Plague Year to show the rise and ebb of the epidemic:

<p>It was indeed coming on amain, for the burials that same week were in the next adjoining parishes thus:—

<table rows="5" cols="4">
  <row role="data">
    <cell role="label">St. Leonard's, Shoreditch</cell>
    <cell role="data">64</cell>
    <cell role="data">84</cell>
    <cell role="data">119</cell>
  </row>
  <row role="data">
    <cell role="label">St. Botolph's, Bishopsgate</cell>
    <cell role="data">65</cell>
    <cell role="data">105</cell>
  </row>
</table>
14 Figures and Graphics

Not all the components of a document are necessarily textual. The most straightforward text will often contain diagrams or illustrations, to say nothing of documents in which image and text are inextricably intertwined, or electronic resources in which the two are complementary.

The encoder may simply record the presence of a graphic within the text, possibly with a brief description of its content, and may also provide a link to a digitized version of the graphic, using the following elements:

- `<graphic>` (graphic) indicates the location of a graphic or illustration, either forming part of a text, or providing an image of it.
- `<figure>` (figure) groups elements representing or containing graphic information such as an illustration, formula, or figure.
- `<figDesc>` (description of figure) contains a brief prose description of the appearance or content of a graphic figure, for use when documenting an image without displaying it.

Any textual information accompanying the graphic, such as a heading and/or caption, may be included within the `<figure>` element itself, in a `<head>` and one or more `<p>` elements, as also may any text appearing within the graphic itself. It is strongly recommended that a prose description of the image be supplied, as the content of a `<figDesc>` element, for the use of applications which are not able to render the graphic, and to render the document accessible to vision-impaired readers. (Such text is not normally considered part of the document proper.)

The simplest use for these elements is to mark the position of a graphic and provide a link to it, as in this example;

```xml
<pb n="412"/>
<figure>
  <graphic url="p412fig.png"/>
</figure>
<pb n="413"/>
```

This indicates that the graphic contained by the file p412fig.png appears between pages 412 and 413.

The `<graphic>` element can appear anywhere that textual content is permitted, within but not between paragraphs or headings. In the following example, the encoder has decided to treat a specific printer’s ornament as a heading:

```xml
<head>
  <graphic url="http://www.iath.virginia.edu/gants/Ornaments/Heads/hp-ral02.gif"/>
</head>
```

More usually, a graphic will have at least an identifying title, which may be encoded using the `<head>` element, or a number of figures may be grouped together in a particular structure.
It is also often convenient to include a brief description of the image. The `<figure>` element provides a means of wrapping one or more such elements together as a kind of graphic block:

```
<figure>
  <graphic url="fessipic.png"/>
  <head>Mr Fezziwig's Ball</head>
  <figDesc>A Cruikshank engraving showing Mr Fezziwig leading a group of revellers.</figDesc>
</figure>
```

These cases should be carefully distinguished from the case where an encoded text is complemented by a collection of digital images, maintained as a distinct resource. The `facs` attribute may be used to associate any element in an encoded text with a digital facsimile of it. In the simple case where only page images are available, the `facs` attribute on the `<pb>` element may be used to associate each image with an appropriate point in the text:

```
<text>
  <pb facs="page1.png" n="1"/>
  <!-- text contained on page 1 is encoded here -->
  <pb facs="page2.png" n="2"/>
  <!-- text contained on page 2 is encoded here -->
</text>
```

This method is only appropriate in the simple case where each digital image file page1.png etc. corresponds with a single transcribed and encoded page. If more detailed alignment of image and transcription is required, for example because the image files actually represent double page spreads, more sophisticated mechanisms are provided in the full TEI Guidelines.

### 15 Interpretation and Analysis

It is often said that all markup is a form of interpretation or analysis. While it is certainly difficult, and may be impossible, to distinguish firmly between objective and subjective information in any universal way, it remains true that judgments concerning the latter are typically regarded as more likely to provide controversy than those concerning the former. Many scholars therefore prefer to record such interpretations only if it is possible to alert the reader that they are considered more open to dispute, than the rest of the markup. This section describes some of the elements provided by the TEI scheme to meet this need.

#### 15.1 Orthographic Sentences

Interpretation typically ranges across the whole of a text, with no particular respect to other structural units. A useful preliminary to intensive interpretation is therefore to segment the text into discrete and identifiable units, each of which can then bear a label for use as a sort of canonical reference. To facilitate such uses, these units may not cross each other, nor nest within each other. They may conveniently be represented using the following element:

```
<s> (s-unit) contains a sentence-like division of a text.
```

As the name suggests, the `<s>` element is most commonly used (in linguistic applications at least) for marking orthographic sentences, that is, units defined by orthographic features such as punctuation. For example, the passage from *Jane Eyre* discussed earlier might be divided into s-units as follows:

```
<pb n="474"/>
<div type="chapter" n="38">
  <p>
```

33
Reader, I married him.

A quiet wedding we had:

be

and I, the parson and clerk, were alone present.

When we got back from

church, I went into the kitchen of the manor-house, where Mary was cooking the
dinner, and

John cleaning the knives, and I said —

Mary, I have been married to Mr Rochester this morning.

...
15.3 General-Purpose Interpretation Elements

The `<w>` element is a specialisation of the `<seg>` element which has already been introduced for use in identifying otherwise unmarked targets of cross references and hypertext links (see section 8. Cross References and Links); it identifies some phrase-level portion of text to which the encoder may assign a user-specified type, as well as a unique identifier; it may thus be used to tag textual features for which there is no other provision in the published TEI Guidelines.

For example, the Guidelines provide no apostrophe element to mark parts of a literary text in which the narrator addresses the reader (or hearer) directly. One approach might be to regard these as instances of the `<q>` element, distinguished from others by an appropriate value for the who attribute. A possibly simpler, and certainly more general, solution would however be to use the `<seg>` element as follows:

```xml
<div type="chapter" n="38">
  <p>
    <seg type="apostrophe">Reader, I married him.</seg> A quiet wedding we had:
    ...
  </p>
</div>
```

The type attribute on the `<seg>` element can take any value, and so can be used to record phrase-level phenomena of any kind; it is good practice to record the values used and their significance in the header.

A `<seg>` element of one type (unlike the `<s>` element which superficially resembles) can be nested within a `<seg>` element of the same or another type. This enables quite complex structures to be represented; some examples were given in section 8.3. Special kinds of Linking above. However, because it must respect the requirement that elements be properly nested and may not cut across each other, it cannot cope with the common requirement to associate an interpretation with arbitrary segments of a text which may completely ignore the document hierarchy. It also requires that the interpretation itself be represented by a single coded value in the type attribute.

Neither restriction applies to the `<interp>` element, which provides powerful features for the encoding of quite complex interpretive information in a relatively straightforward manner. `<interp>` (interpretation) summarizes a specific interpretative annotation which can be linked to a span of text. `<interpGrp>` (interpretation group) collects together a set of related interpretations which share responsibility or type.

These elements allow the encoder to specify both the class of an interpretation, and the particular instance of that class which the interpretation involves. Thus, whereas with `<seg>` one can say simply that something is an apostrophe, with `<interp>` one can say that it is an instance (apostrophe) of a larger class (rhetorical figures).

Moreover, `<interp>` is a stand off element: it does not surround the segments of text which it describes, but instead is linked to the passage in question either by means of the ana attribute discussed in section 8.3. Special kinds of Linking above, or by means of its own inst attribute. This means that any kind of analysis can be represented, independently of the document hierarchy, as well as facilitating the grouping of analyses of a particular type together. A special purpose `<interpGrp>` element is provided for the latter purpose.

For example, suppose that you wish to mark such diverse aspects of a text as themes or subject matter, rhetorical figures, and the locations of individual scenes of the narrative. Different portions of our sample passage from Jane Eyre for example, might be associated with the rhetorical figures of apostrophe, hyperbole, and metaphor; with subject-matter references to churches, servants, cooking, postal service, and honeymoons; and with scenes located in the church, in the kitchen, and in an unspecified location (drawing room?).
These interpretations could be placed anywhere within the `<text>` element; it is however good practice to put them all in the same place (e.g. a separate section of the front or back matter), as in the following example:

```xml
<back>
  <div type="Interpretations">
    <p>
      <interp xml:id="fig-apos-1" type="figureOfSpeech">apostrophe</interp>
      <interp xml:id="fig-hyp-1" type="figureOfSpeech">hyperbole</ interp>
      <interp xml:id="set-church-1" type="setting">church</interp>
      <interp xml:id="ref-church-1" type="reference">church</interp>
      <interp xml:id="ref-serv-1" type="reference">servants</ interp>
    </p>
  </div>
</back>
```

The evident redundancy of this encoding can be considerably reduced by using the `<interp-Grp>` element to group together all those `<interp>` elements which share common attribute values, as follows:

```xml
<back>
  <div type="Interpretations">
    <p>
      <interpGrp type="figureOfSpeech">
        <interp xml:id="fig-apos">apostrophe</ interp>
        <interp xml:id="fig-hyp">hyperbole</ interp>
        <interp xml:id="fig-meta">metaphor</ interp>
      </ interpGrp>
      <interpGrp type="scene-setting">
        <interp xml:id="set-church">church</ interp>
        <interp xml:id="set-kitch">kitchen</ interp>
        <interp xml:id="set-unspec">unspecified</ interp>
      </ interpGrp>
      <interpGrp type="reference">
        <interp xml:id="ref-church">church</ interp>
        <interp xml:id="ref-serv">servants</ interp>
        <interp xml:id="ref-cook">cooking</ interp>
      </ interpGrp>
    </p>
  </div>
</back>
```

Once these interpretation elements have been defined, they can be linked with the parts of the text to which they apply in either or both of two ways. The `ana` attribute can be used on whichever element is appropriate:

```xml
<div type="chapter" n="38">
  <p xml:id="P38.1" ana="#set-church #set-kitch">
```

36
Reader, I married him.

Note in this example that since the paragraph has two settings (in the church and in the kitchen), the identifiers of both have been supplied.

Alternatively, the `<interp>` elements can point to all the parts of the text to which they apply, using their `inst` attribute:

```
<interp xml:id="fig-apos-2" type="figureOfSpeech" inst="#P38.1.1">apostrophe</ interp>
<interp xml:id="set-church-2" type="scene-setting" inst="#P38.1">church</ interp>
<interp xml:id="set-kitchen-2" type="scene-setting" inst="#P38.1">kitchen</ interp>
```

The `<interp>` element is not limited to any particular type of analysis. The literary analysis shown above is but one possibility; one could equally well use `<interp>` to capture a linguistic part-of-speech analysis. For example, the example sentence given in section 8.3, *Special kinds of Linking* assumes a linguistic analysis which might be represented as follows:

```
<interp xml:id="NP1" type="pos">noun phrase, singular</ interp>
<interp xml:id="VV1" type="pos">inflected verb, present-tense singular</ interp>
```

### 16 Technical Documentation

Although the focus of this document is on the use of the TEI scheme for the encoding of existing pre-electronic documents, the same scheme may also be used for the encoding of new documents. In the preparation of new documents (such as this one), XML has much to recommend it: the document’s structure can be clearly represented, and the same electronic text can be re-used for many purposes — to provide both online hypertext or browsable versions and well-formatted typeset versions from a common source for example.

To facilitate this, the TEI Lite schema includes some elements for marking features of technical documents in general, and of XML-related documents in particular.

#### 16.1 Additional Elements for Technical Documents

The following elements may be used to mark particular features of technical documents:

- `<example>` contains any kind of illustrative example.
- `<literal>` contains literal code from some formal language such as a programming language.
- `<identifier>` contains an identifier or name for an object of some kind in a formal language. `<identifier>` is used for tokens such as variable names, class names, type names, function names etc. in formal programming languages.
- `<elementName>` contains the name (generic identifier) of an element.
- `<attribute>` contains the name of an attribute appearing within running text.
- `<formula>` contains a mathematical or other formula.
- `<value>` contains a single attribute value.

The following example shows how these elements might be used to encode a passage from a tutorial introducing the Fortran programming language:
It is traditional to introduce a language with a program like the following: 

```xml
<eg xml:space="preserve">
  CHAR*12 GRTG
  GRTG = 'HELLO WORLD'
  PRINT *, GRTG
END
</eg>
```

This simple example first declares a variable `GRTG`, in the line `CHAR*12 GRTG`, which identifies `GRTG` as consisting of 12 bytes of type `CHAR`. To this variable, the value `HELLO WORLD` is then assigned.

A formatting application, given a text like that above, can be instructed to format examples appropriately (e.g., to preserve line breaks, or to use a distinctive font). Similarly, the use of tags such as `ident` greatly facilitates the construction of a useful index.

The `formula` element should be used to enclose a mathematical or chemical formula presented within the text as a distinct item. Since formulae generally include a large variety of special typographic features not otherwise present in ordinary text, it will usually be necessary to present the body of the formula in a specialized notation. The notation used should be specified by the `notation` attribute, as in the following example:

```xml
<formula notation="tex">
\begin{math}E = mc^{2}\end{math}
</formula>
```

A particular problem arises when XML encoding is the subject of discussion within a technical document, itself encoded in XML. In such a document, it is clearly essential to distinguish clearly the markup occurring within examples from that marking up the document itself, and end-tags are highly likely to occur. One simple solution is to use the predefined entity reference `&lt;` to represent each `<` character which marks the start of an XML tag within the examples. A more general solution is to mark off the whole body of each example as containing data which is not to be scanned for XML mark-up by the parser. This is achieved by enclosing it within a special XML construct called a `CDATA marked section`, as in the following example:

```xml
A list should be encoded as follows: 
<eg>
![CDATA [ <list> <item>First item in the list</item> <item>Second item</item> </list> ]]>
</eg>
```

The `list` element used within the example above will not be regarded as forming part of the document proper, because it is embedded within a marked section (beginning with the special markup declaration `<![CDATA[`, and ending with `]]>`) in the example.

Note also the use of the `gi` element to tag references to element names (or `generic identifiers`) within the body of the text.

### 16.2 Generated Divisions

Most modern document production systems have the ability to generate automatically whole sections such as a table of contents or an index. The TEI Lite scheme provides an element to mark the location at which such a generated section should be placed.
16.3 Index Generation

The `<divGen>` element can be placed anywhere that a division element would be legal, as in the following example:

This example also demonstrates the use of the `type` attribute to distinguish the different kinds of division to be generated: in the first case a table of contents (a `toc`) and in the second an index.

When an existing index or table of contents is to be encoded (rather than one being generated) for some reason, the `<list>` element discussed in section 11. Lists should be used.

16.3 Index Generation

While production of a table of contents from a properly tagged document is generally unproblematic for an automatic processor, the production of a good quality index will often require more careful tagging. It may not be enough simply to produce a list of all parts tagged in some particular way, although extracting (for example) all occurrences of elements such as `<term>` or `<name>` will often be a good departure point for an index.

The TEI schema provides a special purpose `<index>` tag which may be used to mark both the parts of the document which should be indexed, and how the indexing should be done. `<index>` (index entry) marks a location to be indexed for whatever purpose.

For example, the second paragraph of this section might include the following:

... TEI lite also provides a special purpose `<gi>` tag
`<index>`
`<term>`indexing</term>`
`</index>`
`<index>`
`<term>`index (tag)</term>`
`<index>`
`<term>`use in index generation</term>`
`</index>`
`</index>`
which may be used ...
The `<index>` element can also be used to provide a form of interpretive or analytic information. For example, in a study of Ovid, it might be desired to record all the poet’s references to different figures, for comparative stylistic study. In the following lines of the *Metamorphoses*, such a study would record the poet’s references to Jupiter (as *deus*, *se*, and as the subject of *confiteor* [in inflectional form number 227]), to Jupiter-in-the-guise-of-a-bull (as *imago tauri fallacis* and the subject of *teneo*), and so on.

```xml
<l n="3.001">iamque deus posita fallacis
 imagine tauri</l>
<l n="3.002">se confessus erat Dictaeaque rura tenebat</l>
```

This need might be met using the `<note>` element discussed in section in 7. Notes, or with the `<interp>` element discussed in section 15. Interpretation and Analysis. Here we demonstrate how it might also be satisfied by using the `<index>` element.

We assume that the object is to generate more than one index: one for names of deities (called *dn*), another for onomastic references (called *on*), a third for pronominal references (called *pr*) and so forth. One way of achieving this might be as follows:

```xml
<l n="3.001">iamque deus posita fallacis imagine tauri</l>
<index indexName="dn">
  <term>Iuppiter</term>
</index>
<index>
  <term>deus</term>
</index>
<index indexName="on">
  <term>Iuppiter (taurus)</term>
  <term>imago tauri fallacis</term>
</index>
<index indexName="pr">
  <term>Iuppiter</term>
  <term>se</term>
</index>
<index indexName="v">
  <term>Iuppiter</term>
  <term>confiteor (v227)</term>
</index>
```

For each `<index>` element above, an entry will be generated in the appropriate index, using as headword the content of the `<term>` element it contains; the `<term>` elements nested within the secondary `<index>` element in each case provide a secondary keyword. The actual reference will be taken from the context in which the `<index>` element appears, i.e. in this case the identifier of the `<l>` element containing it.

---

4The analysis is taken, with permission, from Willard McCarty and Burton Wright, *An Analytical Onomasticon to the Metamorphoses of Ovid* (Princeton: Princeton University Press, forthcoming). Some simplifications have been undertaken.
16.4 Addresses

The `<address>` element is used to mark a postal address of any kind. It contains one or more `<addrLine>` elements, one for each line of the address. `<address>` (address) contains a postal address, for example of a publisher, an organization, or an individual. `<addrLine>` (address line) contains one line of a postal address.

Here is a simple example:

```xml
<address>
  <addrLine>Computer Center (M/C 135)</addrLine>
  <addrLine>1940 W. Taylor, Room 124</addrLine>
  <addrLine>Chicago, IL 60612-7352</addrLine>
  <addrLine>U.S.A.</addrLine>
</address>
```

The individual parts of an address may be further distinguished by using the `<name>` element discussed above (section 10.1. Names and Referring Strings).

```xml
<address>
  <addrLine>Computer Center (M/C 135)</addrLine>
  <addrLine>1940 W. Taylor, Room 124</addrLine>
  <name type="city">Chicago</name>, IL 60612-7352
  <name type="country">USA</name>
</address>
```

17 Character Sets, Diacritics, etc.

With the advent of XML and its adoption of Unicode as the required character set for all documents, most problems previously associated with the representation of the diverse languages and writing systems of the world are greatly reduced. For those working with standard forms of the European languages in particular, almost no special action is needed: any XML editor should enable you to input accented letters or other non-ASCII characters directly, and they should be stored in the resulting file in a way which is transferable directly between different systems.

There are two important exceptions: the characters & and < may not be entered directly in an XML document, since they have a special significance as initiating markup. They must always be represented as entity references, like this: `&amp;` or `&lt;`. Other characters may also be represented by means of entity reference where necessary, for example to retain compatibility with a pre-Unicode processing system.

18 Front and Back Matter

18.1 Front Matter

For many purposes, particularly in older texts, the preliminary material such as title pages, prefatory epistles, etc., may provide very useful additional linguistic or social information. P5 provides a set of recommendations for distinguishing the textual elements most commonly encountered in front matter, which are summarized here.

18.1.1 Title Page

The start of a title page should be marked with the element `<titlePage>`. All text contained on the page should be transcribed and tagged with the appropriate element from the following list:
<titlePage>
  (title page) contains the title page of a text, appearing within the front or back matter.
</titlePage>

<docTitle>
  (document title) contains the title of a document, including all its constituents, as given on a title page.
</docTitle>

<titlePart>
  (title part) contains a subsection or division of the title of a work, as indicated on a title page.
</titlePart>

<byline>
  (byline) contains the primary statement of responsibility given for a work on its title page or at the head or end of the work.
</byline>

<docAuthor>
  (document author) contains the name of the author of the document, as given on the title page (often but not always contained in a byline).
</docAuthor>

<docDate>
  (document date) contains the date of a document, as given on a title page or in a dateline.
</docDate>

<docEdition>
</docEdition>

<docImprint>
  (document imprint) contains the imprint statement (place and date of publication, publisher name), as given (usually) at the foot of a title page.
</docImprint>

<epigraph>
  (epigraph) contains a quotation, anonymous or attributed, appearing at the start or end of a section or on a title page.
</epigraph>

Typeface distinctions should be marked with the rend attribute when necessary, as described above. Very detailed description of the letter spacing and sizing used in ornamental titles is not as yet provided for by the Guidelines. Changes of language should be marked by appropriate use of the xml:lang attribute or the <foreign> element, as necessary. Names of people, places, or organizations, may be tagged using the <name> element wherever they appear if no other more specific element is available.

Two example title pages follow:

```xml
<titlePage rend="Roman">
  <docTitle>
    <titlePart type="main"> PARADISE REGAIN'D. A POEM In IV <hi>BOOKS</hi>.</titlePart>
  </docTitle>
  <titlePart> To which is added <title> SAMSON AGONISTES</title>. </titlePart>
</titlePage>

<byline>The Author <docAuthor>JOHN MILTON</docAuthor>
</byline>

<docImprint>
  <name>LONDON</name>, Printed by <name>J.M.</name> for <name>John Starkey</name> at the <name>Mitre</name> in <name>Fleetstreet</name>, near <name>Temple-Bar.</name>
</docImprint>

<docDate>MDCLXXI</docDate>
</titlePage>

<titlePage>
  <docTitle>
    <titlePart type="main"> Lives of the Queens of England, from the Norman Conquest; with anecdotes of their courts. </titlePart>
  </docTitle>
  <titlePart type="sub">Now first published from Official Records and other authentic documents private as well as public.</titlePart>
</docTitle>

```
As elsewhere, the ref attribute may be used to link a name with a canonical definition of the entity being named. For example:

```xml
<byline>By <docAuthor>Agnes Strickland</docAuthor></byline>
<epigraph><q>The treasures of antiquity laid up in old historic rolls, I opened.</q></epigraph>
<docImprint>Philadelphia: Blanchard and Lea</docImprint>
<docDate>1860.</docDate>
<titlePage>

18.1.2 Prefatory Matter
Major blocks of text within the front matter should be marked using <div> elements; the following suggested values for the type attribute may be used to distinguish various common types of prefatory matter:

- **preface** A foreword or preface addressed to the reader in which the author or publisher explains the content, purpose, or origin of the text
- **dedication** A formal offering or dedication of a text to one or more persons or institutions by the author.
- **abstract** A summary of the content of a text as continuous prose
- **ack** A formal declaration of acknowledgment by the author in which persons and institutions are thanked for their part in the creation of a text
- **contents** A table of contents, specifying the structure of a work and listing its constituents. The <list> element should be used to mark its structure.
- **frontispiece** A pictorial frontispiece, possibly including some text.

Where other kinds of prefatory matter are encountered, the encoder is at liberty to invent other values for the type attribute.

Like any text division, those in front matter may contain low level structural or non-structural elements as described elsewhere. They will generally begin with a heading or title of some kind which should be tagged using the <head> element. Epistles will contain the following additional elements:

- **<salute>** (salutation) contains a salutation or greeting prefixed to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text, or the salutation in the closing of a letter, preface, etc.
- **<signed>** (signature) contains the closing salutation, etc., appended to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text.
- **<byline>** (byline) contains the primary statement of responsibility given for a work on its title page or at the head or end of the work.
<dateline> (dateline) contains a brief description of the place, date, time, etc. of production of a letter, newspaper story, or other work, prefixed or suffixed to it as a kind of heading or trailer.

<argument> (argument) contains a formal list or prose description of the topics addressed by a subdivision of a text.

<cit> (cited quotation) contains a quotation from some other document, together with a bibliographic reference to its source. In a dictionary it may contain an example text with at least one occurrence of the word form, used in the sense being described, or a translation of the headword, or an example.

<imprimatur> (imprimatur) contains a formal statement authorizing the publication of a work, sometimes required to appear on a title page or its verso.

<opener> (opener) groups together dateline, byline, salutation, and similar phrases appearing as a preliminary group at the start of a division, especially of a letter.

<closer> (closer) groups together salutations, datelines, and similar phrases appearing as a final group at the end of a division, especially of a letter.

Epistles which appear elsewhere in a text will, of course, contain these same elements. As an example, the dedication at the start of Milton’s *Comus* should be marked up as follows:

```xml
<div type="dedication">
  <head>To the Right Honourable <name>JOHN Lord Viscount BRACLY</name>, Son and Heir apparent to the Earl of Bridgewater, &c.</head>
  <salute>MY LORD,</salute>
  <p>ThIs <hi>Poem</hi>, which receiv’d its first occasion of Birth from your Self, and others of your Noble Family .... and as in this representation your attendant <name>Thyrsis</name>, so now in all reall expression</p>
  <closer>
    <salute>Your faithfull, and most humble servant</salute>
    <signed> <name>H. LAWES.</name> </signed>
  </closer>
</div>
```

18.2 Back Matter

18.2.1 Structural Divisions of Back Matter

Because of variations in publishing practice, back matter can contain virtually any of the elements listed above for front matter, and the same elements should be used where this is so. Additionally, back matter may contain the following types of matter within the `<back>` element. Like the structural divisions of the body, these should be marked as `<div>` elements, and distinguished by the following suggested values of the `type` attribute:

**appendix** An ancillary self-contained section of a work, often providing additional but in some sense extra-canonical text.

**glossary** A list of terms associated with definition texts (‘glosses’): this should be encoded as a `<list type="gloss">` element.

**notes** A section in which textual or other kinds of notes are gathered together.

**bibliogr** A list of bibliographic citations: this should be encoded as a `<listBibl>` element.

**index** Any form of pre-existing index to the work (An index may also be generated for a document by using the `<index>` element described above).
colophon A statement appearing at the end of a book describing the conditions of its physical production.

19 The Electronic Title Page

Every TEI text has a header which provides information analogous to that provided by the title page of printed text. The header is introduced by the element `<teiHeader>` and has four major parts:

- `<fileDesc>` (file description) contains a full bibliographic description of an electronic file.
- `<encodingDesc>` (encoding description) documents the relationship between an electronic text and the source or sources from which it was derived.
- `<profileDesc>` (text-profile description) provides a detailed description of non-bibliographic aspects of a text, specifically the languages and sublanguages used, the situation in which it was produced, the participants and their setting.
- `<revisionDesc>` (revision description) summarizes the revision history for a file.

A corpus or collection of texts with many shared characteristics may have one header for the corpus and individual headers for each component of the corpus. In this case the `type` attribute indicates the type of header. `<teiHeader type="corpus">` introduces the header for corpus-level information.

Some of the header elements contain running prose which consists of one or more `<p>`s. Others are grouped:

- Elements whose names end in `Stmt` (for statement) usually enclose a group of elements recording some structured information.
- Elements whose names end in `Decl` (for declaration) enclose information about specific encoding practices.
- Elements whose names end in `Desc` (for description) contain a prose description.

19.1 The File Description

The `<fileDesc>` element is mandatory. It contains a full bibliographic description of the file with the following elements:

- `<titleStmt>` (title statement) groups information about the title of a work and those responsible for its content.
- `<editionStmt>` (edition statement) groups information relating to one edition of a text.
- `<extent>` (extent) describes the approximate size of a text stored on some carrier medium or of some other object, digital or non-digital, specified in any convenient units.
- `<publicationStmt>` (publication statement) groups information concerning the publication or distribution of an electronic or other text.
- `<seriesStmt>` (series statement) groups information about the series, if any, to which a publication belongs.
- `<notesStmt>` (notes statement) collects together any notes providing information about a text additional to that recorded in other parts of the bibliographic description.
- `<sourceDesc>` (source description) describes the source(s) from which an electronic text was derived or generated, typically a bibliographic description in the case of a digitized text, or a phrase such as "born digital" for a text which has no previous existence.

A minimal header has the following structure:
19.1.1 The Title Statement

The following elements can be used in the `<titleStmt>`:

- `<title>` (title) contains a title for any kind of work.
- `<author>` (author) in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of an author, personal or corporate, of a work; for example in the same form as that provided by a recognized bibliographic name authority.
- `<sponsor>` (sponsor) specifies the name of a sponsoring organization or institution.
- `<funder>` (funding body) specifies the name of an individual, institution, or organization responsible for the funding of a project or text.
- `<principal>` (principal researcher) supplies the name of the principal researcher responsible for the creation of an electronic text.
- `<respStmt>` (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply. May also be used to encode information about individuals or organizations which have played a role in the production or distribution of a bibliographic work.

The title of a digital resource derived from a non-digital one will obviously be similar. However, it is important to distinguish the title of the computer file from that of the source text, for example:

```
<titleStmt>
<title>Two stories by Edgar Allen Poe: a machine readable transcription</title>
<author>Poe, Edgar Allen (1809-1849)</author>
<respStmt>
  <resp>compiled by</resp>
  <name>James D. Benson</name>
</respStmt>
</titleStmt>
```
19.1.2 The Edition Statement

The `<editionStmt>` groups information relating to one edition of the digital resource (where `edition` is used as elsewhere in bibliography), and may include the following elements:

- `<edition>` (edition) describes the particularities of one edition of a text.
- `<respStmt>` (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply. May also be used to encode information about individuals or organizations which have played a role in the production or distribution of a bibliographic work.

Example:

```xml
<editionStmt>
  <edition n="U2">Third draft, substantially revised <date>1987</date>
</edition>
</editionStmt>
```

Determining exactly what constitutes a new edition of an electronic text is left to the encoder.

19.1.3 The Extent Statement

The `<extent>` statement describes the approximate size of the digital resource.

Example:

```xml
<extent>4532 bytes</extent>
```

19.1.4 The Publication Statement

The `<publicationStmt>` is mandatory. It may contain a simple prose description or groups of the elements described below:

- `<publisher>` (publisher) provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item.
- `<distributor>` (distributor) supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for the distribution of a text.
- `<authority>` (release authority) supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for making a work available, other than a publisher or distributor.

At least one of these three elements must be present, unless the entire publication statement is in prose. The following elements may occur within them:

- `<pubPlace>` (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published.
- `<address>` (address) contains a postal address, for example of a publisher, an organization, or an individual.
- `<idno>` (identifier) supplies any form of identifier used to identify some object, such as a bibliographic item, a person, a title, an organization, etc. in a standardized way.
- `<availability>` (availability) supplies information about the availability of a text, for example any restrictions on its use or distribution, its copyright status, any licence applying to it, etc.
- `<licence>` contains information about a licence or other legal agreement applicable to the text.
- `<date>` (date) contains a date in any format.

Example:
19.1.5 Series and Notes Statements

The `<seriesStmt>` element groups information about the series, if any, to which a publication belongs. It may contain `<title>`, `<idno>`, or `<respStmt>` elements.

The `<notesStmt>`, if used, contains one or more `<note>` elements which contain a note or annotation. Some information found in the notes area in conventional bibliography has been assigned specific elements in the TEI scheme.

19.1.6 The Source Description

The `<sourceDesc>` is a mandatory element which records details of the source or sources from which the computer file is derived. It may contain simple prose or a bibliographic citation, using one or more of the following elements:

- `<bibl>` (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged.
- `<listBibl>` (citation list) contains a list of bibliographic citations of any kind.

Examples:

```xml
<sourceDesc>
  <bibl>The first folio of Shakespeare, prepared by Charlton Hinman (The Norton Facsimile, 1968)</bibl>
</sourceDesc>
```

```xml
<sourceDesc>
  <bibl>
    <author>CNN Network News</author>
    <title>News headlines</title>
    <date>12 Jun 1989</date>
  </bibl>
</sourceDesc>
```

19.2 The Encoding Description

The `<encodingDesc>` element specifies the methods and editorial principles which governed the transcription of the text. Its use is highly recommended. It may be prose description or may contain elements from the following list:

- `<projectDesc>` (project description) describes in detail the aim or purpose for which an electronic file was encoded, together with any other relevant information concerning the process by which it was assembled or collected.
- `<samplingDecl>` (sampling declaration) contains a prose description of the rationale and methods used in sampling texts in the creation of a corpus or collection.
19.2 The Encoding Description

<editorialDecl> (editorial practice declaration) provides details of editorial principles and practices applied during the encoding of a text.
<refsDecl> (references declaration) specifies how canonical references are constructed for this text.
<classDecl> (classification declarations) contains one or more taxonomies defining any classificatory codes used elsewhere in the text.

19.2.1 Project and Sampling Descriptions
Examples of <projectDesc> and <samplingDesc>:

<encodingDesc>
  <projectDesc>
    <p>Texts collected for use in the Claremont Shakespeare Clinic, June 1990.</p>
  </projectDesc>
</encodingDesc>

<encodingDesc>
  <samplingDecl>
    <p>Samples of 2000 words taken from the beginning of the text</p>
  </samplingDecl>
</encodingDesc>

19.2.2 Editorial Declarations
The <editorialDecl> contains a prose description of the practices used when encoding the text. Typically this description should cover such topics as the following, each of which may conveniently be given as a separate paragraph.

correction how and under what circumstances corrections have been made in the text.

normalization the extent to which the original source has been regularized or normalized.

quotatation what has been done with quotation marks in the original – have they been retained or replaced by entity references, are opening and closing quotes distinguished, etc.

hyphenation what has been done with hyphens (especially end-of-line hyphens) in the original – have they been retained, replaced by entity references, etc.

segmentation how has the text has been segmented, for example into sentences, tone-units, graphemic strata, etc.

interpretation what analytic or interpretive information has been added to the text.

Example:

<editorialDecl>
  <p>The part of speech analysis applied throughout section 4 was added by hand and has not been checked.</p>
  <p>Errors in transcription controlled by using the WordPerfect spelling checker.</p>
  <p>All words converted to Modern American spelling using Webster’s 9th Collegiate dictionary.</p>
</editorialDecl>
19.2.3 Reference and Classification Declarations

The `<refsDecl>` element is used to document the way in which any standard referencing scheme built into the encoding works. In its simplest form, it consists of prose description.

Example:

```xml
<refsDecl>
  <p>The `att` attribute on each `<gi>div</gi>` contains the canonical reference for each division in the form XX.yyy where XX is the book number in roman numeral and yyy is the section number in arabic.</p>
  <p>Milestone tags refer to the edition of 1830 as E30 and that of 1850 as E50.</p>
</refsDecl>
```

The `<classDecl>` element groups together definitions or sources for any descriptive classification schemes used by other parts of the header. At least one such scheme must be provided, encoded using the following elements:

- `<taxonomy>` (taxonomy) defines a typology either implicitly, by means of a bibliographic citation, or explicitly by a structured taxonomy.
- `<bibl>` (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged.
- `<category>` (category) contains an individual descriptive category, possibly nested within a superordinate category, within a user-defined taxonomy.
- `<catDesc>` (category description) describes some category within a taxonomy or text typology, either in the form of a brief prose description or in terms of the situational parameters used by the TEI formal `<textDesc>`.

In the simplest case, the taxonomy may be defined by a bibliographic reference, as in the following example:

```xml
<classDecl>
  <taxonomy xml:id="LC-SH">
    <bibl>Library of Congress Subject Headings</bibl>
  </taxonomy>
</classDecl>
```

Alternatively, or in addition, the encoder may define a special purpose classification scheme, as in the following example:

```xml
<taxonomy xml:id="B">
  <bibl>Brown Corpus</bibl>
  <category xml:id="B.A">
    <catDesc>Press Reportage</catDesc>
    <category xml:id="B.A1">
      <catDesc>Daily</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="B.A2">
      <catDesc>Sunday</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="B.A3">
      <catDesc>National</catDesc>
    </category>
  </category>
</taxonomy>
```
19.3 The Profile Description

The `<profileDesc>` element enables information characterizing various descriptive aspects of a text to be recorded within a single framework. It has three optional components:

- `<creation>` (creation) contains information about the creation of a text.
- `<langUsage>` (language usage) describes the languages, sublanguages, registers, dialects, etc. represented within a text.
- `<textClass>` (text classification) groups information which describes the nature or topic of a text in terms of a standard classification scheme, thesaurus, etc.

The `<creation>` element is useful for documenting where a work was created, even though it may not have been published or recorded there.

Example:

```xml
<creation>
  <date when="1992-08">August 1992</date>
  <name type="place">Taos, New Mexico</name>
</creation>
```

The `<langUsage>` element is useful where a text contains many different languages. It may contain `<language>` elements to document each particular language used:

```xml
<langUsage>
  <language ident="fr-CA" usage="60">Québécois</language>
  <language ident="en-CA" usage="20">Canadian business English</language>
  <language ident="en-GB" usage="20">British English</language>
</langUsage>
```
The `<textClass>` element classifies a text. This may be done with reference to a classification system locally defined by means of the `<classDecl>` element, or by reference to some externally defined established scheme such as the Universal Decimal Classification. Texts may also be classified using lists of keywords, which may themselves be drawn from locally or externally defined control lists. The following elements are used to supply such classifications:

- `<classCode>` (classification code) contains the classification code used for this text in some standard classification system.
- `<catRef>` (category reference) specifies one or more defined categories within some taxonomy or text typology.
- `<keywords>` (keywords) contains a list of keywords or phrases identifying the topic or nature of a text.

The simplest way of classifying a text is by means of the `<classCode>` element. For example, a text with classification 410 in the Universal Decimal Classification might be documented as follows:

```xml
<classCode scheme="http://www.udc.org">410</classCode>
```

When a classification scheme has been locally defined using the `<taxonomy>` element discussed in the preceding subsection, the `<catRef>` element should be used to reference it. To continue the earlier example, a work classified in the Brown Corpus as Press reportage - Sunday and also as Religion might be documented as follows:

```xml
<catRef target="#B.A3 #B.D"/>
```

The element `<keywords>` contains a list of keywords or phrases identifying the topic or nature of a text. As usual, the attribute `scheme` identifies the source from which these terms are taken. For example, if the LC Subject Headings are used, following declaration of that classification system in a `<taxonomy>` element as above:

```xml
<textClass>
  <keywords scheme="#LCSH">
    <list>
      <item>English literature -- History and criticism -- Data processing.</item>
      <item>English literature -- History and criticism -- Theory etc.</item>
      <item>English language -- Style -- Data processing.</item>
    </list>
  </keywords>
</textClass>
```

Multiple classifications may be supplied using any of the mechanisms described in this section.

### 19.4 The Revision Description

The `<revisionDesc>` element provides a change log in which each change made to a text may be recorded. The log may be recorded as a sequence of `<change>` elements each of which contains a brief description of the change. The attributes `when` and `who` may be used to identify when the change was carried out and the agency responsible for it.

Example:

```xml
<revisionDesc>
  <change when="1991-03-06" who="#EMB">File format updated</change>
  <change when="1990-05-25" who="#EMB">Stuart's corrections entered</change>
</revisionDesc>
```
In a production environment it will usually be found preferable to use some kind of automated system to track and record changes. Many such version control systems, as they are known, can also be configured to update the TEI Header of a file automatically.
A  List of Elements Described

The TEI Lite schema is a pure subset of TEI P5. In the following list of elements and classes used, some information, notably the examples, derives from the canonical definition for the element in TEI P5 and may therefore refer to elements or attributes not provided by TEI Lite. Note however that only the elements listed here are available within the TEI Lite schema. These specifications also refer to many attributes which although available in TEI Lite are not discussed in this tutorial for lack of space.

A.1  Elements

<TEI> (TEI document) contains a single TEI-conformant document, combining a single TEI header with one or more members of the model.resource class. Multiple <TEI> elements may be combined within a <TEI> (or |teiCorpus>) element. [4. Default Text Structure 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text]

Module textstructure

Attributes

att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.describedResource

Contained by

core: teiCorpus
textstructure: TEI
textstructure: TEI text

header: teiHeader

May contain

header: teiHeader
textstructure: TEI
textstructure: TEI text

Note This element is required. It is customery to specify the TEI namespace http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0 on it, for example: <TEI version=”4.4.0” xml:lang=”it” xmlns=”http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0”>.

Example

<TEI version=”3.3.0” xmlns=”http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0”>
  <teiHeader>
   <fileDesc>
     <titleStmt>
       <title>The shortest TEI Document Imaginable</title>
     </titleStmt>
   </fileDesc>
   <publicationStmt>
     <p>First published as part of TEI P2, this is the P5 version using a namespace.</p>
   </publicationStmt>
   <sourceDesc>
     <p>No source: this is an original work.</p>
   </sourceDesc>
  </fileDesc>
  <teiHeader>
  <text>
   <body>
     <p>This is about the shortest TEI document imaginable.</p>
   </body>
  </text>
</TEI>
Example

```xml
<TEI version="2.9.1" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
<teiHeader>
<fileDesc>
<titleStmt>
<title>A TEI Document containing four page images </title>
</titleStmt>
<pубlicationStmt>
<p>Unpublished demonstration file.</p>
</publicationStmt>
<sourceDesc>
<p>No source: this is an original work.</p>
</sourceDesc>
</fileDesc>
</teiHeader>
<facsimile>
<graphic url="page1.png"/>
<graphic url="page2.png"/>
<graphic url="page3.png"/>
<graphic url="page4.png"/>
</facsimile>
</TEI>
```

Schematron

```xml
<sch:ns prefix="tei" uri="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/>
<sch:ns prefix="xs" uri="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"/>
```

Schematron

```xml
<sch:ns prefix="rng" uri="http://relaxng.org/ns/structure/1.0"/>
<sch:ns prefix="rna" uri="http://relaxng.org/ns/compatibility/annotations/1.0"/>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
<sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
<elementRef key="teiHeader"/>
<alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
<sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
<classRef key="model.resource" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
<elementRef key="TEI" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</sequence>
<elementRef key="TEI" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</alternate>
</sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element TEI
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   ( teiHeader, (( model.resource+, TEI* ) | TEI+ ) )
}
```

<abbr> (abbreviation) contains an abbreviation of any sort. [3.6.5. Abbreviations and Their Expansions]"
Module core
Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type), @subtype)

@type (type) allows the encoder to classify the abbreviation according to some convenient typology.

Derived from att.typed

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Sample values include: suspension (suspension) the abbreviation provides the first letter(s) of the word or phrase, omitting the remainder.

contraction (contraction) the abbreviation omits some letter(s) in the middle.

brevigraph the abbreviation comprises a special symbol or mark.

superscription (superscription) the abbreviation includes writing above the line.

acronym (acronym) the abbreviation comprises the initial letters of the words of a phrase.

title (title) the abbreviation is for a title of address (Dr, Ms, Mr, ...)

organization (organization) the abbreviation is for the name of an organization.

geographic (geographic) the abbreviation is for a geographic name.

Note The type attribute is provided for the sake of those who wish to classify abbreviations at their point of occurrence; this may be useful in some circumstances, though usually the same abbreviation will have the same type in all occurrences. As the sample values make clear, abbreviations may be classified by the method used to construct them, the method of writing them, or the referent of the term abbreviated; the typology used is up to the encoder and should be carefully planned to meet the needs of the expected use. For a typology of Middle English abbreviations, see 6.2.

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.editorial

May contain
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Analysis:
- interp
- interpGrp
- pc
- s
- w

Core:
- abbr
- add
- address
- choice
- cit
- corr
- date
- del
- emph
- expan
- foreign
- gap
- gloss
- graphic
- hi
- index
- lb
- mentioned
- milestone
- name
- note
- num
- orig
- pb
- ptr
- q
- ref
- reg
- rs
- sic
- soCalled
- term
- time
- title
- unclear

Figures:
- figure
- formula

Header:
- idno

Linking:
- anchor
- seg

Tagdocs:
- att
code
- gi
- ident
- val

Character data

Note: If abbreviations are expanded silently, this practice should be documented in the <editorialDecl>, either with a <normalization> element or a <p>.

Example

```xml
<choice>
  <expan>North Atlantic Treaty Organization</expan>
  <abbr cert="low">NorATO</abbr>
  <abbr cert="high">NATO</abbr>
  <abbr cert="high" xml:lang="fr">OTAN</abbr>
</choice>
```

Example

```xml
<choice>
  <abbr>SPQR</abbr>
  <expan>senatus populusque romanorum</expan>
</choice>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element abbr
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  attribute type { text }?,
  macro.phraseSeq
}
```

=add>
(addition) contains letters, words, or phrases inserted in the source text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector. [3.5.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions]

Module core

Attributes
- att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) (att.transcriptional (@status, @cause, @seq) (att.editLike (@evidence, @instant))) (att.written (@hand)) att.placement (@place) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))
Member of model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: pc s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del editor emph expan foreign
gloss head hi item l label lg mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q
ref reg rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time unclear

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent licence

linking: seg

tagdocs: eg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss
graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb
ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time unclear

figures: figure formula table

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

character data

Note In a diplomatic edition attempting to represent an original source, the <add> element should not be used for additions to the current TEI electronic edition made by editors or encoders. In these cases, either the <corr> or <supplied> element are recommended.

In a TEI edition of a historical text with previous editorial emendations in which such additions or reconstructions are considered part of the source text, the use of <add> may be appropriate, dependent on the editorial philosophy of the project.

Example

The story I am going to relate is true as to its main facts, and as to the consequences <add place="above">of these facts</add> from which this tale takes its title.

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element add
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.transcriptional.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.dimensions.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}
```
<addrLine> (address line) contains one line of a postal address. [3.6.2. Addresses 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.] 3.12.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]

Module core
Attributes @att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (@att.global.rendition (@rend)) (@att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (@att.global.analytic (@ana)) (@att.global.facs (@facs)) (@att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (@att.global.source (@source))

Member of model.addrPart
Contained by
core: address
May contain
analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear
figures: figure formula
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: @att code gi ident val
character data

Note Addresses may be encoded either as a sequence of lines, or using any sequence of component elements from the model.addrPart class. Other non-postal forms of address, such as telephone numbers or email, should not be included within an <address> element directly but may be wrapped within an <addrLine> if they form part of the printed address in some source text.

Example

<address>
  <addrLine>Computing Center, MC 135</addrLine>
  <addrLine>P.O. Box 6998</addrLine>
  <addrLine>Chicago, IL</addrLine>
  <addrLine>60680 USA</addrLine>
</address>

Example

<addrLine>
  <ref target="tel:+1-201-555-0123">(201) 555 0123</ref>
</addrLine>

Content model

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element addrLine { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
<address>

(address) contains a postal address, for example of a publisher, an organization, or an individual. [3.6.2. Addresses 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]

Module core
Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @id, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend))
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

Member of model.addressLike model.publicationStmtPart.detail

Contained by
analysis:

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item lb label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal publicationStmt sponsor

linking: seg

tagdocs: eg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain
analysis: interp interpGrp

core: addrLine gap index lb milestone name note pb rs

figures: figure

header: idno

linking: anchor

Note This element should be used for postal addresses only. Within it, the generic element <addrLine> may be used as an alternative to any of the more specialized elements available from the model.addrPart class, such as <street>, <postCode> etc.

Example Using just the elements defined by the core module, an address could be represented as follows:

  <address>
    <street>via Marsala 24</street>
    <postCode>40126</postCode>
    <name>Bologna</name>
    <name>Italy</name>
  </address>

Example When a schema includes the names and dates module more specific elements such as country or settlement would be preferable over generic <name>:

  <address>
    <street>via Marsala 24</street>
    <postCode>40126</postCode>
    <settlement>Bologna</settlement>
    <country>Italy</country>
  </address>

Example
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

<address>
  <addrLine>Computing Center, MC 135</addrLine>
  <addrLine>P.O. Box 6998</addrLine>
  <addrLine>Chicago, IL 60680</addrLine>
  <addrLine>USA</addrLine>
</address>

Example

<address>
  <country key="FR"/>
  <settlement type="city">Lyon</settlement>
  <postcode>69002</postcode>
  <district type="arrondissement">IIème</district>
  <district type="quartier">Perrache</district>
  <street>
    <num>30</num>, Cours de Verdun
  </street>
</address>

Content model

<content>
  <sequence>
    <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.addrPart"/>
      <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
  </sequence>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element address
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.global*, ( model.addrPart, model.global* )+ )
}

<anchor> (anchor point) attaches an identifier to a point within a text, whether or not it corresponds with a textual element. [8.4.2. Synchronization and Overlap 16.5. Correspondence and Alignment]

Module linking

Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend))
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by

analysis: w
<argument>

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label lg list listBibl mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled sp speaker stage term time title unclear

figures: cell figure table
header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor
linking: seg
tagdocs: eg
textstructure: argument back body dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

May contain Empty element

Note On this element, the global xml:id attribute must be supplied to specify an identifier for the point at which this element occurs within a document. The value used may be chosen freely provided that it is unique within the document and is a syntactically valid name. There is no requirement for values containing numbers to be in sequence.

Example

<s>The anchor is he<anchor xml:id="A234"/>re somewhere.</s>
<s>Help me find it.<ptr target="#A234"/></s>

Content model <content> <empty/></content>

Schema Declaration

```
<element anchor { att.global.attributes, att.typed.attributes, empty }>
```

<argument> (argument) contains a formal list or prose description of the topics addressed by a subdivision of a text. 4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions 4.6. Title Pages

Module textstructure

Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source)

Member of model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

core: lg list

figures: figure table

textstructure: back body dateline div front group opener titlePage

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

core: bibl cit desc gap head index l label lg list listBibl milestone note p ph q sp stage

figures: figure table

linking: anchor

tagdocs: eg

Example
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

<argument>
  <p>Monte Video — Maldonado — Excursion
      to R Polanco — Lazo and Bolas — Partridges —
      Absence of Trees — Deer — Capybara, or River Hog —
      Tucutuco — Molothrus, cuckoo-like habits — Tyrant
      Flycatcher — Mocking-bird — Carrion Hawks —
      Tubes formed by Lightning — House struck</p>
</argument>

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <sequence>
    <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
      <classRef key="model.headLike"/>
    </alternate>
    <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.common"/>
      <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element argument
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (( model.global | model.headLike )* , ( model.common , model.global* )+ )
}
```

<att> (attribute) contains the name of an attribute appearing within running text. [22].

Documentation Elements

Module tagdocs

Attributes

| att.global | @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space | att.global.rendition | @rend |
| att.global.linking | @corresp, @next, @prev | att.global.analytic | @ana |
| att.global.facs | @facs | att.global.responsibility | @cert, @resp | att.global.source | @source |

@scheme (scheme) supplies an identifier for the scheme in which this name is defined.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Sample values include: TEI (Text Encoding Initiative) this attribute is part of the TEI scheme. [Default]

DBK (Docbook) this attribute is part of the Docbook scheme.

XX (unknown) this attribute is part of an unknown scheme.

imaginary (imaginary) the attribute is from a non-existent scheme, for illustrative purposes only

XHTML (XHTML) the attribute is part of the XHTML language
XML (XML) the attribute is part of the XML language

XI (XI) the attribute is defined in the xInclude schema

Member of model.phrase.xml

Contained by

analysis:  

core:  abbr add addrLine author biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expand foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

figures:  cell figDesc

header:  authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor

linking:  seg

tagdocs:  eg

textstructure:  byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain XSD Name

Note As an alternative to using the scheme attribute a namespace prefix may be used.

Where both scheme and a prefix are used, the prefix takes precedence.

Example

<p>The TEI defines several <soCalled>global</soCalled> attributes; their names include <att>xml:id</att>, <att>rend</att>, <att>xml:lang</att>, <att>n</att>, <att>xml:space</att>, and <att>xml:base</att>; <att scheme="XX">type</att> is not amongst them.</p>

Content model  
<content> <dataRef key="teidata.name"/></content>

Schema Declaration

element att { att.global.attributes, attribute scheme { text }?, teidata.name }

<author> (author) in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of an author, personal or corporate, of a work; for example in the same form as that provided by a recognized bibliographic name authority. [3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement]

Module core

Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef)) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) (att.datable (@period)) (att.datable.w3c (@when))

Member of model.respLike

Contained by

core: bibl

header: editionStmt titleStmt

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Note: Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use a generally recognized name authority file to supply the content for this element. The attributes key or ref may also be used to reference canonical information about the author(s) intended from any appropriate authority, such as a library catalogue or online resource.

In the case of a broadcast, use this element for the name of the company or network responsible for making the broadcast.

Where an author is unknown or unspecified, this element may contain text such as Unknown or Anonymous. When the appropriate TEI modules are in use, it may also contain detailed tagging of the names used for people, organizations or places, in particular where multiple names are given.

Example

```xml
<author>British Broadcasting Corporation</author>
<author>La Fayette, Marie Madeleine Pioche de la Vergne, comtesse de (1634–1693)</author>
<author>Anonymous</author>
<author>Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation</author>
<author><persName>Beaumont, Francis</persName> and <persName>John Fletcher</persName></author>
<author><orgName key="BBC">British Broadcasting Corporation</orgName>: Radio 3 Network</author>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
<authority> (release authority) supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for making a work available, other than a publisher or distributor. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]
```
Availability supplies information about the availability of a text, for example any restrictions on its use or distribution, its copyright status, any licence applying to it, etc. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]

Module header

Attributes: att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref)

Member of model.publicationStmtPart.agency

Contained by:

header: publicationStmt

May contain:

analysis: interp interpGrp
core: abbr address choice date emph expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr q ref rs soCalled term time title

figures: figure

header: idno

linking: anchor
tagdocs: att code gi ident val

character data

Example

<authority>John Smith</authority>

Content model

<content>
<macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element authority
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited
}

Availability (availability) supplies information about the availability of a text, for example any restrictions on its use or distribution, its copyright status, any licence applying to it, etc. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]

Module header

Attributes: att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default)

status (status) supplies a code identifying the current availability of the text.

Status Optional

Datatype: teidata.enumerated

Legal values are:

  free (free) the text is freely available.

  unknown (unknown) the status of the text is unknown.

  restricted (restricted) the text is not freely available.
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Member of model.biblPart model.publicationStmtPart.detail

Contained by

core: bibl
header: publicationStmt

May contain

core: p
header: licence

Note A consistent format should be adopted

Example

```xml
<availability status="restricted">
  <p>Available for academic research purposes only.</p>
</availability>

<availability status="free">
  <p>In the public domain</p>
</availability>

<availability status="restricted">
  <p>Available under licence from the publishers.</p>
</availability>

Example

```xml
<availability>
  <licence target="http://opensource.org/licenses/MIT">
    <p>The MIT License</p>
    <p>Copyright (C) 2011 by The University of Victoria</p>
    <p>Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:
    <p>The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.</p>
    <p>THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.</p>
  </licence>
</availability>

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="1"
Schema Declaration

element availability
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  attribute status { "free" | "unknown" | "restricted" }?,
  ( model.availabilityPart | model.pLike )+
}

(back matter) contains any appendices, etc. following the main part of a text.

Module textstructure

Attributes
att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend))
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
att.declaring (@decls)

contained by
textstructure: text

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

core: divGen gap head index lb list listBibl milestone note p pb

figures: figure table

linking: anchor

textstructure: argument byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition
docImprint docTitle epigraph postscript signed titlePage titlePart trailer

Note Because cultural conventions differ as to which elements are grouped as back matter
and which as front matter, the content models for the <back> and <front>
elements are identical.

Example

<back>
  <div type="appendix">
    <head>The Golden Dream or, the Ingenuous Confession</head>
    <p>TO shew the Depravity of human Nature, and how apt the Mind is to be
    misled by Trinkets
    and false Appearances, Mrs. Two-Shoes does acknowledge, that after
    she became rich, she
    had like to have been, too fond of Money
    <!-- .... -->
    </p>
  </div>
</back>

<back>
  <div type="epistle">
    <head>A letter from the Printer, which he desires may be inserted</head>
    <salute>Sir.</salute>
  </div>
</back>
I have done with your Copy, so you may return it to the Vatican, if you please;

<!-- ... -->
</p>
</div>
<div type="advert">
<head>The Books usually read by the Scholars of Mrs Two-Shoes are these and are sold at Mr Newbery's at the Bible and Sun in St Paul's Church-yard.</head>
<li><item n="1">The Christmas Box, Price 1d.</item>
<i n="2">The History of Giles Gingerbread, 1d.</i></li>
<!-- ... -->
<i n="42">A Curious Collection of Travels, selected from the Writers of all Nations, 10 Vol, Pr. bound 1l.</i>
</div>

<head>By the KING's Royal Patent, Are sold by J. NEWBERY, at the Bible and Sun in St. Paul's Church-Yard.</head>
<li><item n="1">Dr. James's Powders for Fevers, the Small-Pox, Measles, Colds, 6c. 2s. 6d</item>
<i n="2">Dr. Hooper's Female Pills, 1s.</i>
<!-- ... -->
</li>
</div>
</back>

Content model

<content>
<sequence>
<alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
<classRef key="model.frontPart"/>
<classRef key="model.pLike.front"/>
<classRef key="model.pLike"/>
<classRef key="model.listLike"/>
<classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
</sequence>
<alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
<classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
<classRef key="model.frontPart"/>
<classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
<classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
<alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
<classRef key="model.divLike"/>
<classRef key="model.frontPart"/>
<classRef key="model.divLike"/>
<classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
</sequence>
<sequence>
<classRef key="model.divLike"/>
<alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
<classRef key="model.frontPart"/>
<classRef key="model.divLike"/>
<classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
</sequence>
</content>
Schema Declaration

element back
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  {
    (model.frontPart | model.pLike.front | model.pLike | model.listLike | model.global)*,
    (model.div1Like, (model.frontPart | model.div1Like | model.global)*)?
  },
  (model.divBottomPart, (model.divBottomPart | model.global)*)?
}

<bibl> (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged. [3.12.1. Methods of Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References], [2.2.7. The Source Description], [15.3.2. Declareable Elements]

Module core

Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facis (@facis)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.docStatus (@status)

Member of model.biblLike model.biblPart

Contained by core: add bibl cit corr del desc emph head hi item itemlist listBibl note orig p q ref reg relatedItem sic stage title unclear

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change licence sourceDesc taxonomy

linking: seg

textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

71
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

May contain
analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
core: abbr add address author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor emph expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr pubPlace publisher q ref reg relatedItem respStmt rs sic soCalled term time title unclear
figures: figure
header: availability distributor edition extent funder idno principal sponsor
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: code ident
character data
Note Contains phrase-level elements, together with any combination of elements from the model.biblPart class
Example

<bibl>Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to Literature in English (Yale, 1990)</bibl>

Example

<bibl>
</bibl>

Example

<bibl type="article" subtype="book_chapter"
xml:id="carlin_2003">
<author>
 <name>
  <surname>Carlin</surname>
  <forename>Claire</forename>
 </name>
</author>, <title level="a">The Staging of Impotence : France’s last congrès</title> dans <bibl type="monogr">
<title level="m">Theatrum mundi : studies in honor of Ronald W. Tobin</title>, éd.
<editor>
 <name>
  <forename>Claire</forename>
  <surname>Carlin</surname>
 </name>
</editor> et <editor>
 <name>
  <forename>Kathleen</forename>
  <surname>Wine</surname>
 </name>
</editor>, <pubPlace>Charlottesville, Va.</pubPlace>, <publisher>Rookwood Press</publisher>, <date when="2003">2003</date>.
</bibl>
<biblScope>

Content model

```
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.highlighted"/>
    <classRef key="model.pPart.data"/>
    <classRef key="model.pPart.edit"/>
    <classRef key="model.segLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.biblPart"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element bibl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  att.docStatus.attributes,
  (text | model.gLike | model.highlighted | model.pPart.data | model.pPart.edit | model.segLike | model.ptrLike | model.biblPart | model.global)*
}
```

</biblScope>

(scope of bibliographic reference) defines the scope of a bibliographic reference, for example as a list of page numbers, or a named subdivision of a larger work. [3.12.2.5. Scopes and Ranges in Bibliographic Citations]

Module core

Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.citing (@unit, @from, @to)

Member of model.imprintPart

Contained by

core: bibl

header: seriesStmt

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure formula
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code gi ident val
character data

Note When a single page is being cited, use the from and to attributes with an identical value. When no clear endpoint is provided, the from attribute may be used without to; for example a citation such as p. 3ff might be encoded <biblScope from="3">p. 3ff</biblScope>.

It is now considered good practice to supply this element as a sibling (rather than a child) of <imprint>, since it supplies information which does not constitute part of the imprint.

Example

<biblScope>pp 12–34</biblScope>
<biblScope unit="page" from="12" to="34"/>
<biblScope unit="volume">II</biblScope>
<biblScope unit="page">12</biblScope>

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element biblScope
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.citing.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq
}
```

<body> (text body) contains the whole body of a single unitary text, excluding any front or back matter. [4. Default Text Structure]

Module textstructure
Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend)
  (att.global/linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global/analytics (@ana))
  (att.global/facs (@facs)) (att.global/responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global/source)
  (@source) att.declaring (@decls)

Contained by
textstructure: text

May contain
analysis: interp interpGrp
core: bibl cit desci desc gap head index lab lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q
  sp stage
figures: figure table
linking: anchor
tagdocs: eg
textstructure: argument byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate epigraph opener
  postscript salute signed trailer

74
Example

```
Example
</body>
<content>
  <sequence>
    <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
  <sequence minOccurs="0">
    <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
    <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
      <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
    </alternate>
  </sequence>
  <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
    <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
      <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
    </alternate>
  </sequence>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
    <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
      <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
    </alternate>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
    <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
      <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
    </alternate>
  </sequence>
  <sequence>
    <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
        <elementRef key="schemaSpec"/>
        <classRef key="model.common"/>
      </alternate>
    </sequence>
  </sequence>
</content>
```
Schema Declaration

element body
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  ( model.global*,
    ( model.divTop, ( model.global | model.divTop )* )?,
    ( model.divGenLike, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )?,
    ( ( model.divLike, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+ |
      ( model.divLike, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+ |
      ( ( schemaSpec | model.common ), model.global* )+,
        ( model.divLike, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+ |
      ( model.divLike, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+ |
      ( model.divLike, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+
      )
  ),
  ( model.divBottom, model.global* )
}
<byline> (byline) contains the primary statement of responsibility given for a work on its title page or at the head or end of the work. [4.2.2. Openers and Closers | 4.5. Front Matter]

Module textstructure

Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.booking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facets (@facets)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

Member of model.divWrapper | model.pLike.front | model.titlepagePart

Contained by core: lg list

figures: figure table
textstructure: back body div front group opener titlePage

May contain analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term title unclear

figures: figure formula
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code gi ident val
textstructure: docAuthor

character data

Note The byline on a title page may include either the name or a description for the document’s author. Where the name is included, it may optionally be tagged using the <docAuthor> element.

Example

<byline>Written by a CITIZEN who continued all the while in London. Never made publick before.</byline>

Example

<byline>Written from her own MEMORANDUMS</byline>

Example

<byline>By George Jones, Political Editor, in Washington</byline>

Example

<byline>BY
<docAuthor> THOMAS PHILIPOTT, </docAuthor>
Master of Arts,
(Sometimes)
Of Clare-Hall in Cambridge.</byline>

Content model

<content>
<alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
<textNode/>
</content>
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

```xml
<classRef key="model.gLike"/>
<classRef key="model.phrase"/>
<elementRef key="docAuthor"/>
<classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element byline
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | docAuthor | model.global )*
}

<catDesc> (category description) describes some category within a taxonomy or text
typology, either in the form of a brief prose description or in terms of the situational
parameters used by the TEI formal <textDesc>. [2.3.7. The Classification
Declaration]

Module header
Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend))
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source
(@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref)

Contained by
header: category

May contain
core: abbr address choice date emph expan foreign gloss hi mentioned name num ptr ref
rs soCalled term time title

header: idno
tagdocs: att code gi ident val

character data

Example

<catDesc>Prose reportage</catDesc>

Example

<catDesc>
<textDesc n="novel">
  <channel mode="w">print; part issues</channel>
  <constitution type="single"/>
  <derivation type="original"/>
  <domain type="art"/>
  <factuality type="fiction"/>
  <interaction type="none"/>
  <preparedness type="prepared"/>
  <purpose type="entertain" degree="high"/>
  <purpose type="inform" degree="medium"/>
</textDesc>
</catDesc>

Content model
<catRef>

(category reference) specifies one or more defined categories within some taxonomy or text typology. [2.4.3. The Text Classification]

Module header

Attributes

| att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) | att.global.rendition ( @rend) |
| att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev) | att.global.analytic ( @ana) |
| att.global.facs ( @facs) | att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp) |
| att.global.source ( @source) | att.pointing ( @targetLang, @target, @evaluate) |

@scheme identifies the classification scheme within which the set of categories concerned is defined, for example by a <taxonomy> element, or by some other resource.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.pointer

Contained by: textClass

May contain Empty element

Note The scheme attribute needs to be supplied only if more than one taxonomy has been declared.

Example

```xml
<catRef scheme="#myTopics"
    target="#news #prov #sales2"/>
<!- elsewhere ->>
<taxonomy xml:id="myTopics">
    <category xml:id="news">
        <catDesc>Newspapers</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="prov">
        <catDesc>Provincial</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="sales2">
        <catDesc>Low to average annual sales</catDesc>
    </category>
</taxonomy>
```

79
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Content model

```
<content> <empty/></content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element catRef
{
    att.global.attributes,
    att.pointing.attributes,
    attribute scheme { text }?,
    empty
}
```

``<category>`` (category) contains an individual descriptive category, possibly nested within a superordinate category, within a user-defined taxonomy. [2.3.7. The Classification Declaration]

Module header

```
Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) att.global.analytic (@ana)
(att.global.facs (@facs)) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source)
```

Contained by

```
header: category taxonomy
```

May contain

```
core: desc gloss
```

```
header: catDesc category
```

Example

```
<category xml:id="b1">
    <catDesc>Prose reportage</catDesc>
</category>
```

Example

```
<category xml:id="b2">
    <catDesc>Prose </catDesc>
    <category xml:id="b11">
        <catDesc>journalism</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="b12">
        <catDesc>fiction</catDesc>
    </category>
</category>
```

Example

```
<category xml:id="LIT">
    <catDesc xml:lang="pl">literatura piękna</catDesc>
    <catDesc xml:lang="en">fiction</catDesc>
    <category xml:id="LPROSE">
        <catDesc xml:lang="pl">proza</catDesc>
        <catDesc xml:lang="en">prose</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="LPOETRY">
        <catDesc xml:lang="pl">poezja</catDesc>
        <catDesc xml:lang="en">poetry</catDesc>
    </category>
</category>
```
Content model

```
<content>
  <sequence>
    <alternate>
      <elementRef key="catDesc" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <classRef key="model.descLike"/>
        <elementRef key="equiv"/>
        <elementRef key="gloss"/>
      </alternate>
    </alternate>
    <elementRef key="category" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
 element category
  {
    att.global.attributes,
    ( ( catDesc+ | ( model.descLike | equiv | gloss )* ), category* )
  }
```

Example

```
<cell>
  (cell) contains one cell of a table.

  Module figures
  Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend))
  (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
  (att.global.facers (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source
  (@source)) att.tableDecoration (@role, @rows, @cols)
  Figure figures:
  May contain
  analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
  core: abbr add address bibl choice cit cor date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss
  graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig p
  pb ptr q ref ref reg rs sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear
  figures: figure formula table
  header: idno
  linking: anchor seg
  tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val
  character data
</cell>
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

| General conduct | Not satisfactory, on account of his great unpunctuality and inattention to duties |

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element cell
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.tableDecoration.attributes,
  macro.specialPara
}
```

**<change>** (change) documents a change or set of changes made during the production of a source document, or during the revision of an electronic file. [2.6. The Revision Description 2.4.1. Creation 11.7. Identifying Changes and Revisions]

Module header

Attributes att.ascribed (@who) att.datable (@period) att.datable.w3c (@when)
att.docStatus (@status) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
att.global.rendition (@rend) att.global/linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)
att.global/analytic (@ana) att.global.facs (@facs) att.global/responsibility
(@cert, @resp) att.global/source (@source) att/typed (@type, @subtype)
@target (target) points to one or more elements that belong to this change.
Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

`<header>`

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc ps w
core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss
graphic hi index 1 label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note nnn orig p
pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear
figures: figure formula table
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code cg gi ident val
character data

Note The who attribute may be used to point to any other element, but will typically specify a `<respStmt>` or `<person>` element elsewhere in the header, identifying the person responsible for the change and their role in making it.
It is recommended that changes be recorded with the most recent first. The status attribute may be used to indicate the status of a document following the change documented.

Example

```
<revisionDesc status="published">
  <change who="#BZ" when="2008-02-02" status="public">Finished chapter 23</change>
  <change who="#BZ" when="2008-01-02" status="draft">Finished chapter 2</change>
  <change n="P2.2" when="1991-12-21" who="#LDB">Added examples to section 3</change>
  <change when="1991-11-11" who="#MSM">Deleted chapter 10</change>
</revisionDesc>
```

Example

```
<profileDesc>
  <creation>
    <listChange>
      <change xml:id="DRAFT1">First draft in pencil</change>
      <change xml:id="DRAFT2" notBefore="1880-12-09">First revision, mostly using green ink</change>
      <change xml:id="DRAFT3" notBefore="1881-02-13">Final corrections as supplied to printer.</change>
    </listChange>
  </creation>
</profileDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element change {
  att.ascribed.attributes,
  att.datable.attributes,
  att.docStatus.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute target { list { + } }?,
  macro.specialPara}
```
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

<choice> (choice) groups a number of alternative encodings for the same point in a text.

[3.5. Simple Editorial Changes]

Module core

Attributes
att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) att.global.analytic (@ana)
(att.global.facs (@facs)) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source)

Member of model.pPart.editorial

Contained by
analysis: pcs w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del desc editor emph
expan foreign gloss head hi item label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace
publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder
language licence principal sponsor

linking: seg

tagdocs: eg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

core: abbr choice corr expan orig reg sic unclear

linking: seg

Note Because the children of a <choice> element all represent alternative ways of
encoding the same sequence, it is natural to think of them as mutually exclusive.
However, there may be cases where a full representation of a text requires the
alternative encodings to be considered as parallel.

Note also that <choice> elements may self-nest.

Where the purpose of an encoding is to record multiple witnesses of a single work,
rather than to identify multiple possible encoding decisions at a given point, the
<app> element and associated elements discussed in section 12.1. The Apparatus
Entry, Readings, and Witnesses should be preferred.

Example An American encoding of Gulliver’s Travels which retains the British spelling but
also provides a version regularized to American spelling might be encoded as follows.

<p>Lastly, That, upon his solemn oath to observe all the above
articles, the said man-mountain shall have a daily allowance of
meat and drink sufficient for the support of <choice>
<sic>1724</sic>
<corr>1728</corr>
</choice>
of our subjects,
with free access to our royal person, and other marks of our
<choice>
<orig>favour</orig>
<reg>favor</reg>
</choice>.</p>

Content model

<content>
<alternate minOccurs="2"
maxOccurs="unbounded">
<classRef key="model.choicePart"/>
</content>
 Schema Declaration

element choice { att.global.attributes, ( model.choicePart | choice )+ }

(cited quotation) contains a quotation from some other document, together with a
bibliographic reference to its source. In a dictionary it may contain an example text
with at least one occurrence of the word form, used in the sense being described, or a
translation of the headword, or an example. [3.3.3. Quotation 4.3.1. Grouped Texts
9.3.5.1. Examples]

Module core
Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend))
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source
(@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Member of model.quoteLike
Contained by
analysis:

core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope cit corr del desc editor emph expan foreign
gloss head hi item1 label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref
reg rs sic soCalled sp speaker stage term title unclear
figures: cell figDesc figure
header: change distributor edition extent licence
linking: seg

tagdocs: eg
textstructure: argument body div docAuthor docDate docEdition epigraph imprimatur
postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain
analysis: interp interpGrp pc
core: bibl cit gap graphic index lb listBibl milestone note pb ptr q ref
figures: figure formula
linking: anchor
tagdocs: eg

Example

<cit>
  <q>and the breath of the whale is frequently attended with such an
    insupportable smell,
    as to bring on disorder of the brain.</q>
  <bib>Ulloa's South America</bib>
</cit>

Content model

<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="1"
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

```xml
<alternate>
<content>
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.egLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.entryPart"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
  <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.attributable"/>
  <elementRef key="pc"/>
  <elementRef key="q"/>
</alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element cit
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    model.biblLike | model.egLike | model.entryPart | model.global | model.graphicLike | model.ptrLike | model.attributable | pc | q )+
}
```

<classCode> (classification code) contains the classification code used for this text in some standard classification system. [2.4.3. The Text Classification]

Module header

Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facets (@facets)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

@scheme identifies the classification system in use, as defined by, e.g. a
<taxonomy> element, or some other resource.

Status Required
Datatype teidata.pointer

Contained by: textClass
May contain
analysis: interp interpGrp
core: abbr address choice date emph expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr q ref rs soCalled term time title
figures: figure
header: idno
linking: anchor
tagdocs: att code gi ident val
character data

Example

```xml
<classCode scheme="http://www.udc.org">410</classCode>
```

Content model
Schema Declaration

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```xml
element classCode
  {
    att.global.attributes,
    attribute scheme { text },
    macro.phraseSeq.limited
  }
```

**classDecl>** (classification declarations) contains one or more taxonomies defining any classificatory codes used elsewhere in the text. [2.3.7. The Classification Declaration | 2.3. The Encoding Description]

**Module header**

Attributes

```xml
att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend))
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
```

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc

May contain

header: taxonomy

Example

```xml
<classDecl>
  <taxonomy xml:id="LCSH">
    <bibl>Library of Congress Subject Headings</bibl>
  </taxonomy>
</classDecl>

<textClass>
  <keywords scheme="#LCSH">
    <term>Political science</term>
    <term>United States -- Politics and government — Revolution, 1775-1783</term>
  </keywords>
</textClass>
```

**Content model**

```xml
<content>
  <elementRef key="taxonomy" minOccurs="1"
               maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element classDecl { att.global.attributes, taxonomy+ }```
<closer> (closer) groups together salutations, datelines, and similar phrases appearing as a final group at the end of a division, especially of a letter. [4.2.2. Openers and Closers 4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]

Module textstructure
Attributes

Member of model.divBottomPart
Contained by

core: lg list
figures: figure table
textstructure: back body div front group postscript

May contain
analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear
figures: figure formula
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code gi ident val
textstructure: dateline salute signed
character data

Example

<div type="letter">
<p>perhaps you will favour me with a sight of it when convenient.</p>
</div>

Example

<content>
<alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">

Content model

88
<code>

```
<textNode/>
<classRef key="model.gLike"/>
<elementRef key="signed"/>
<elementRef key="dateline"/>
<elementRef key="salute"/>
<classRef key="model.phrase"/>
<classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element closer
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.written.attributes,
  {
    text
    | model.gLike | signed | dateline | salute | model.phrase | model.global
  }
}

<code> contains literal code from some formal language such as a programming language.

[22.1.1. Phrase Level Terms]

Module tagdocs

Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend)
(attrib.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) att.global.analytic (@ana)
(att.global.facs (@facs)) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source)

@lang (formal language) a name identifying the formal language in which the
code is expressed

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.word

Member of model.emphLike

Contained by

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope cor corr date del desc editor emph expan

foreign gloss head hi item id label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace

publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder

language licence principal sponsor

linking: seg

tagdocs: eg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain Character data only

Example

<code lang="JAVA"> Size fCheckbox1Size = new Size();
  fCheckbox1Size.Height = 500;
</code>

89
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

```
fCheckbox1Size.Width = 500;
xCheckbox1.setSize(fCheckbox1Size);
</code>
```

**Content model**

```
<content> <textNode/></content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```

element code { att.global.attributes, attribute lang { text }?, text }
```

**<corr>** (correction) contains the correct form of a passage apparently erroneous in the copy text. [3.5.1. Apparent Errors]

**Module core**

**Attributes**

```
att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend))
(att.global/linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global/analytic (@ana))
(att.global/facs (@facs)) (att.global/responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global/source (@source))
(att.editLike (@evidence, @instant)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
```

**Member of**

```
model.choicePart
model.pPart.transcriptional
```

**Contained by**

```
analysis: pc s w
core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor emph expan
foreign gloss head hi item l label lg listBibl mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace
publisher q ref reg rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear
figures: cell
header: change distributor edition extent licence
linking: seg
tagdocs: eg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer
```

**May contain**

```
analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss
graphic hi index l label lb lg listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear
figures: figure formula table
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val
```

**Example** If all that is desired is to call attention to the fact that the copy text has been corrected, `<corr>` may be used alone:

```
I don’t know, Juan. It’s so far in the past now — how <corr>can we</corr> prove or disprove anyone’s theories?
```

**Example** It is also possible, using the `<choice>` and `<sic>` elements, to provide an uncorrected reading:
I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now —

how <choice>

<sic>we can</sic>

<corr>can we</corr>

</choice> prove or
disprove anyone's theories?

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
<element corr>
  {
    att.global.attributes,
    att.editLike.attributes,
    att.typed.attributes,
    macro.paraContent}
```

<creation> (creation) contains information about the creation of a text.

Module header

Attributes

att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend))

(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

(att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source

(@source)) att.datable (@period) (att.datable.w3c (@when))

Member of model.profileDescPart

Contained by header: profileDesc

May contain core: abbr address choice date emph expan foreign gloss hi mentioned name num ptr q

refs soCalled term time title

header: idno
tagdocs: att code gi ident val

character data

Note The <creation> element may be used to record details of a text’s creation, e.g. the
date and place it was composed, if these are of interest.

It may also contain a more structured account of the various stages or revisions
associated with the evolution of a text; this should be encoded using the

<listChange> element. It should not be confused with the <publicationStmt>

element, which records date and place of publication.

Example

```
<creation>
  <date>Before 1987</date>
</creation>
```

Example
<creation>
  <date when="1988-07-10">10 July 1988</date>
</creation>

Content model

<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/>
    <elementRef key="listChange"/>
  </alternate>
</content>

Schema Declaration

```
<date> (date) contains a date in any format. 3.6.4. Dates and Times 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 2.6. The Revision Description 3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information 15.2.3. The Setting Description 13.4. Dates

Module core

Attributes att.global (/@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend) att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev) att.global.analytic (@ana)
att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source) att.canonical (/@key, @ref) att.datable (@period) att.datable.w3c (@when) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.dateLike model.publicationStmtPart.detail

Contained by

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal publicationStmt sponsor

linking: seg

tagdocs: eg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
```
<dateline>

(dateline) contains a brief description of the place, date, time, etc. of production of a letter, newspaper story, or other work, prefixed or suffixed to it as a kind of heading or trailer. [4.2.2. Openers and Closers]

Module textstructure

Attributes [att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))]
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Member of model.divWrapper | model.pLike.front

Contained by

core: lg list

figures: figure, table

textstructure: back, body, closer, div, front, group, opener

May contain

analysis: interp, interpGrp, pc, s, w

core: abbr, add, address, choice, corr, date, del, emph, expand, foreign, gap, gloss, graphic, hi, index, lb, mentioned, milestone, name, note, num, orig, pb, ptr, q, ref, reg, rs, sic, soCalled, term, time, title, unclear

figures: figure, formula

header: idno

linking: anchor, seg

tagdocs: att, code, gi, ident, val

textstructure: docDate

character data

Example

<dateline>Walden, this 29. of August 1592</dateline>

Example

<div type="chapter">
  <p>
    <!-- ... --> and his heart was going like mad and yes I said yes I will
    Yes.</p>
    <closer>
    <dateline>
      <name type="place">Trieste-Zürich-Paris,\</name>
      <date>1914–1921</date>
    </dateline>
    </closer>
</div>

Content model

<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <TextNode/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
    <elementRef key="docDate"/>
  </alternate>
</content>

Example

<dateline>Walden, this 29. of August 1592</dateline>

Example

<div type="chapter">
  <p>
    <!-- ... --> and his heart was going like mad and yes I said yes I will
    Yes.</p>
    <closer>
    <dateline>
      <name type="place">Trieste-Zürich-Paris,\</name>
      <date>1914–1921</date>
    </dateline>
    </closer>
</div>

Content model

<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <TextNode/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
    <elementRef key="docDate"/>
  </alternate>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element dateline
{
  att.global.attributes,
<del>

(del) contains a letter, word, or passage deleted, marked as deleted, or otherwise indicated as superfluous or spurious in the copy text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector. [3.5.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions]

Module core

Attributes

`att.global` (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) `att.global.rendition` (@rend)
`att.global.facs` (@facs)
`att.global.responsibility` (@cert, @resp)
`att.global.source` (@source)
`att.transcriptional` (@status, @cause, @seq)
`att.editLike` (@evidence, @instant)

Member of `model.pPart.transcriptional`

Contained by

analysis: `pc` `s` `w`

core: `abbr` `add` `addrLine` `author` `bibl` `biblScope` `corr` `date` `del` `editor` `emph` `expan` `foreign` `gloss` `head` `hi` `item` `l` `label` `lg` `mentioned` `name` `note` `num` `orig` `p` `pubPlace` `publisher` `q` `ref` `reg` `rs` `sic` `soCalled` `speaker` `stage` `term` `time` `title` `unclear`

figures: `cell`

header: `change` `distributor` `edition` `extent` `licence`

linking: `seg`

tagdocs: `eg`

textstructure: `byline` `closer` `dateline` `docAuthor` `docDate` `docEdition` `docImprint` `imprimatur` `opener` `salute` `signed` `titlePart` `trailer`

May contain

analysis: `interp` `interpGrp` `pc` `s` `w`

core: `abbr` `add` `address` `bibl` `choice` `cit` `corr` `date` `del` `desc` `emph` `expan` `foreign` `gap` `gloss` `graphic` `hi` `index` `l` `label` `lb` `lg` `listBibl` `mentioned` `milestone` `name` `note` `num` `orig` `p` `ptr` `q` `ref` `reg` `rs` `sic` `soCalled` `stage` `term` `time` `title` `unclear`

figures: `figure` `formula` `table`

header: `idno`

linking: `anchor` `seg`

tagdocs: `att` `code` `eg` `gi` `ident` `val`

Character data

Note This element should be used for deletion of shorter sequences of text, typically single words or phrases. The `<delSpan>` element should be used for longer sequences of text, for those containing structural subdivisions, and for those containing overlapping additions and deletions.

The text deleted must be at least partially legible in order for the encoder to be able to transcribe it (unless it is restored in a `<supplied>` tag). Illegible or lost text within a deletion may be marked using the `<gap>` tag to signal that text is present but has not been transcribed, or is no longer visible. Attributes on the `<gap>` element may be used to indicate how much text is omitted, the reason for omitting it, etc. If text is not fully legible, the `<unclear>` element (available when using the
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

additional tagset for transcription of primary sources) should be used to signal the areas of text which cannot be read with confidence in a similar way.

Degrees of uncertainty over what can still be read, or whether a deletion was intended may be indicated by use of the `<certainty>` element (see 21. Certainty, Precision, and Responsibility).

There is a clear distinction in the TEI between `<del>` and `<surplus>` on the one hand and `<gap>` or `<unclear>` on the other. `<del>` indicates a deletion present in the source being transcribed, which states the author’s or a later scribe’s intent to cancel or remove text. `<surplus>` indicates material present in the source being transcribed which should have been so deleted, but which is not in fact. `<gap>` or `<unclear>`, by contrast, signal an editor’s or encoder’s decision to omit something or their inability to read the source text. See sections 11.3.1.7. Text Omitted from or Supplied in the Transcription and 11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination for the relationship between these and other related elements used in detailed transcription.

Example

```xml
<l>
  <del rend="overtyped">Mein</del> Frisch
  <del rend="overstrike" type="primary">schwebt</del>
  weht der Wind
</l>
```

Example

```xml
<del rend="overstrike">
  <gap reason="illegible" quantity="5" unit="character"/>
</del>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element del
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.transcriptional.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.dimensions.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}
```

<desc> (description) contains a short description of the purpose, function, or use of its parent element, or when the parent is a documentation element, describes or defines the object being documented. [22.4.1. Description of Components]

Module core

Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
The `<desc>` element characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

**Type**

Characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

**Derived from**

Att.typed

**Status**

Optional

**Datatype**

tedia.enumerated

**Suggested values include:** deprecationInfo (deprecation information)

This element describes why or how its parent element is being deprecated, typically including recommendations for alternate encoding.

```xml
<dataSpec module="tei"
    ident="teidata.point"
    validUntil="2050-02-25">
    <desc type="deprecationInfo"
        versionDate="2018-09-14"
        xml:lang="en">Several standards bodies, including NIST in the USA, strongly recommend against ending the representation of a number with a decimal point. So instead of <q>3.</q> use either <q>3</q> or <q>3.0</q>.</desc>
</dataSpec>
```

**Member of**

model.descLike, model.labelLike

**Contained by**

analysis: interp, interpGrp

core: add, corr, del, desc, emph, gap, graphic, head, hi, item, lg, list, listBibl, note, orig, p, q, ref, reg, sic, stage, title, unclear

figures: cell, figDesc, figure

header: category, change, licence, taxonomy

linking: seg

textstructure: argument, body, div, docEdition, epigraph, imprimatur, postscript, salute, signed, titlePart, trailer

**May contain**

core: abbr, address, bibl, choice, cit, date, desc, emph, expan, foreign, gloss, hi, label, list, listBibl, mentioned, name, num, ptr, q, ref, rs, soCalled, stage, term, time, title

figures: table

header: idno

tagdocs: att, code, eg, gi, ident, val

character data

**Note**

When used in a specification element such as `<elementSpec>`, TEI convention requires that this be expressed as a finite clause, beginning with an active verb.

**Example**

Example of a `<desc>` element inside a documentation element.

```xml
<dataSpec module="tei"
    ident="teidata.point">
    <desc versionDate="2010-10-17"
        xml:lang="en">defines the data type used to express a point in cartesian space.</desc>
    <content>
    </content>
</dataSpec>
```
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Example Example of a <desc> element in a non-documentation element.

Schematron A <desc> with a type of deprecationInfo should only occur when its parent element is being deprecated. Furthermore, it should always occur in an element that is being deprecated when <desc> is a valid child of that element.

Content model

Schema Declaration

<distributor> (distributor) supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for the distribution of a text. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]

Module header

Contained by core: bibl

header: publicationStmtPart
May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expand foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num prig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gid ident val

class character data

Example

<distributor>Oxford Text Archive</distributor>
<distributor>Redwood and Burn Ltd</distributor>

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element distributor
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq
}
```

99
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Example

<body>
  <div type="part">
    <head>Fallacies of Authority</head>
    <p>The subject of which is Authority in various shapes, and the object, to repress all exercise of the reasoning faculty.</p>
    <div n="1" type="chapter">
      <head>The Nature of Authority</head>
      <p>With reference to any proposed measures having for their object the greatest happiness of the greatest number [...]</p>
      <div n="1.1" type="section">
        <head>Analysis of Authority</head>
        <p>What on any given occasion is the legitimate weight or influence to be attached to authority [...] </p>
      </div>
      <div n="1.2" type="section">
        <head>Appeal to Authority, in What Cases Fallacious.</head>
        <p>Reference to authority is open to the charge of fallacy when [...] </p>
      </div>
    </div>
  </div>
</body>

Schematron <sch:report test="(ancestor::tei:l or ancestor::tei:lg) and not(ancestor::tei:floatingText)"> Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain higher-level structural elements such as div, unless div is a descendant of floatingText. </sch:report>

Schematron <sch:report test="(ancestor::tei:p or ancestor::tei:ab) and not(ancestor::tei:floatingText)"> Abstract model violation: p and ab may not contain higher-level structural elements such as div, unless div is a descendant of floatingText. </sch:report>

Content model

<content>
  <sequence>
    <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
    </alternate>
    <sequence minOccurs="0">
      <alternate>
        <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
          <alternate>
            <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
            <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
          </alternate>
          <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        </sequence>
      </alternate>
    </sequence>
    <sequence minOccurs="1">
      <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <alternate>
          <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
          <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
        </alternate>
        <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </alternate>
    </sequence>
  </sequence>
</content>
Schema Declaration

```xml
<elementRef key="schemaSpec"/>
<classRef key="model.common"/>
</alternate>
<classRef key="model.global"
minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</sequence>
<sequence minOccurs="0"
maxOccurs="unbounded">
<alternate>
<classRef key="model.divLike"/>
<classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
</alternate>
<classRef key="model.global"
minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</sequence>
</alternate>
<sequence minOccurs="0"
maxOccurs="unbounded">
<classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
<classRef key="model.global"
minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</content>
```

<divGen>

(automatically generated text division) indicates the location at which a
textual division generated automatically by a text-processing application is to
appear. [3.9.2. Index Entries]

Module core

Attributes  
att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)  att.global.rendition (@rend)
att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)  att.global.analytic (@ana)

101
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

(att.global.fac ( @facs )) (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp )) (att.global.source ( @source )) (att.typed ( type, @subtype ))

@type specifies what type of generated text division (e.g. index, table of contents, etc.) is to appear.

Derived from att.typed

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Sample values include: index an index is to be generated and inserted at this point.

toc a table of contents

figlist a list of figures

tablilist a list of tables

Note Valid values are application-dependent; those shown are of obvious utility in document production, but are by no means exhaustive.

Member of model.divGenLike model.frontPart

Contained by textstructure: back body div front

May contain core: head

Note This element is intended primarily for use in document production or manipulation, rather than in the transcription of pre-existing materials; it makes it easier to specify the location of indices, tables of contents, etc., to be generated by text preparation or word processing software.

Example One use for this element is to allow document preparation software to generate an index and insert it in the appropriate place in the output. The example below assumes that the indexName attribute on <index> elements in the text has been used to specify index entries for the two generated indexes, named NAMES and THINGS:

Example Another use for <divGen> is to specify the location of an automatically produced table of contents:

Example Another use for <divGen> is to specify the location of an automatically produced table of contents:
Schema Declaration

```xml
<docAuthor>
  <classRef key="model.headLike"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</docContent>
</docAuthor>

<docAuthor> (document author) contains the name of the author of the document, as given on the title page (often but not always contained in a byline). [4.6. Title Pages]

Module textstructure

Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend)
att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev) att.global.analytic (@ana)
att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source) att.canonical (@key, @ref)

Member of model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by
core: lg list
figures: figure table
textstructure: back body byline div front group titlePage

May contain
analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear
figures: figure formula
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code gi ident val

character data

Note The document author’s name often occurs within a byline, but the <docAuthor> element may be used whether the <byline> element is used or not. It should be used only for the author(s) of the entire document, not for author(s) of any subset or part of it. (Attributions of authorship of a subset or part of the document, for example of a chapter in a textbook or an article in a newspaper, may be encoded with <byline> without <docAuthor>.)

Example

```xml
<titlePage>
  <docTitle>
    <titlePart>Travels into Several Remote Nations of the World, in Four Parts.</titlePart>
  </docTitle>
</titlePage>
```
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

<byline> By <docAuthor>Lemuel Gulliver</docAuthor>, First a Surgeon, and then a Captain of several Ships</byline>

Content model

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element docAuthor
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq
}

<docDate> (document date) contains the date of a document, as given on a title page or in a dateline. [4.6. Title Pages]

Module textstructure

Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend) att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source)

@when (when) gives the value of the date in standard form, i.e. YYYY-MM-DD.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.temporal.w3c

Note For simple dates, the when attribute should give the Gregorian or proleptic Gregorian date in one of the formats specified in XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition.

Member of model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by core: lg list

figures: figure table
textstructure: back body dateline div docImprint front group titlePage

May contain analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph exp del foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

character data

Note Cf. the general <date> element in the core tag set. This specialized element is provided for convenience in marking and processing the date of the documents, since
it is likely to require specialized handling for many applications. It should be used only for the date of the entire document, not for any subset or part of it.

Example

<docImprint> Oxford, Clarendon Press, <docDate>1987</docDate> </docImprint>

Content model

<content>
<macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element docDate
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute when { text }?,
  macro.phraseSeq
}


Module textstructure

Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend)
   att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) att.global.analytic (@ana)
   att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source)

Member of model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by textstructure: back front titlePage

May contain analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss
   graphic hi index l label lb lb list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb
   ptr q ref regs rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure formula table

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

character data

Note Cf. the <edition> element of bibliographic citation. As usual, the shorter name has been given to the more frequent element.

Example


Content model

<content>
<macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

<docImprint> (document imprint) contains the imprint statement (place and date of publication, publisher name), as given (usually) at the foot of a title page. [4.6. Title Pages]

Module textstructure

Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) att.global.analytic (@ana)
(att.global.facs (@facs)) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source)

Member of model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by textstructure: back front titlePage

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

textstructure: docDate

character data

Note Cf. the <imprint> element of bibliographic citations. As with title, author, and editions, the shorter name is reserved for the element likely to be used more often.

Example


Imprints may be somewhat more complex:

<docImprint>
  <pubPlace>London</pubPlace>
  Printed for <name>E. Nutt</name>, at
  <pubPlace>Royal Exchange</pubPlace>;
  <name>J. Roberts</name> in
  <pubPlace>wick-Lane</pubPlace>;
  <name>A. Dodd</name> without
  <pubPlace>Temple-Bar</pubPlace>;
  and <name>J. Graves</name> in
  <pubPlace>St. James's street</pubPlace>.
  <date>1722</date>
</docImprint>
Content model

```
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
    <elementRef key="pubPlace"/>
    <elementRef key="docDate"/>
    <elementRef key="publisher"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

element docImprint
{
  att.global.attributes,
  {
    text
    | model.gLike | model.phrase | pubPlace | docDate | publisher | model.global
  }
}

<docTitle> (document title) contains the title of a document, including all its constituents, as given on a title page. [4.6. Title Pages]

Module textstructure

Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend)
(att.global/linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) att.global.analytic (@ana)
(att.global/facs (@facs)) att.global/responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global/source (@source)
(att.canonical (@key, @ref))

Member of model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by textstructure: back front titlePage

May contain analysis: interp interpGrp
core: gap index lb milestone note ph
figures: figure
linking: anchor
textstructure: titlePart

Example

```
<docTitle>
  <titlePart type="main">The DUNCIAD, VARIOURVM.</titlePart>
  <titlePart type="sub">WITH THE PROLEGOMENA of SCRIBLERUS.</titlePart>
</docTitle>
```

Content model

```
<content>
  <sequence>
    <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
</content>
```
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

<sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <elementRef key="titlePart"/>
  <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</sequence>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element docTitle
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  ( model.global*, ( titlePart, model.global* )+ )
}

<edition> (edition) describes the particularities of one edition of a text. 

Module header

Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend))
  (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
  (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

Member of model.biblPart

Contained by core: bib

header: editionStmt

May contain analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi
  index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled
  term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

character data

Example

<edition>First edition <date>Oct 1990</date>
</edition>


Content model

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
Schema Declaration

```
 element edition { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

<editionStmt> 
(edition statement) groups information relating to one edition of a text. 

2.2.2. The Edition Statement

Module header

Attributes

| att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) | att.global.rendition (@rend) |
| att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev) | att.global.analytic (@ana) |
| att.global.fac ( @fac ) | att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ) | att.global.source ( @source ) |

Contained by

header: fileDesc

May contain

core: author editor p respStmt

header: edition funder principal sponsor

Example

```
<editionStmt>
 <respStmt>
  <resp> Adapted by </resp>
  <name> Elizabeth Kirk </name>
 </respStmt>
<editionStmt>
```

Example

```
<editionStmt>
 <p> First edition, <date> Michaelmas Term, 1991. </date> 
 </p>
<editionStmt>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate>
  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <sequence>
   <elementRef key="edition"/>
   <classRef key="model.respLike" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
 element editionStmt
 {  
   att.global.attributes,
   ( model.pLike+ | ( edition, model.respLike* ) ) 
 } 
```
<editor> contains a secondary statement of responsibility for a bibliographic item, for example the name of an individual, institution or organization, (or of several such) acting as editor, compiler, translator, etc. [3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors]

Module core
Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend))
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.datable (@period) att.datable.w3c (@when)

Member of model.respLike
Contained by
core: bibl
header: editionStmt seriesStmt titleStmt
May contain
analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expand foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref ref rs sic soCalled term time title unclear
figures: figure formula
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code gi ident val
character data

Note A consistent format should be adopted.
Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use generally recognized authority lists for the exact form of personal names.

Example

<editor role="Technical_Editor">Ron Van den Branden</editor>
<editor role="Editor-in-Chief">John Walsh</editor>
<editor role="Managing_Editor">Anne Baillot</editor>

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
<element editor
{ att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.datable.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}>
```
<editorialDecl> (editorial practice declaration) provides details of editorial principles and practices applied during the encoding of a text. [2.3.3. The Editorial Practices Declaration 2.3. The Encoding Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]

Module header
Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) {att.global.rendition (@rend) (att.global.mentioning (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) {att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) {att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default)}

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by header: encodingDesc

May contain core: p

Example

<editorialDecl>
  <p>All words converted to Modern American spelling using Webster's 9th Collegiate dictionary</p>
  <p>All opening quotation marks converted to ” all closing quotation marks converted to &cdq;.</p>
</editorialDecl>

Content model

<content>
  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element editorialDecl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  model.pLike+
}

<eg> (example) contains any kind of illustrative example. [22.5. Element Specifications 22.5.3. Attribute List Specification]

Module tagdocs
Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) {att.global.rendition (@rend) (att.global.mentioning (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) {att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) (att.global.source (@source))

Member of model.egLike

Contained by core: add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l note orig p q ref reg sic stage title unclear
figures: cell figDesc figure
header: change licence
linking: seg
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pe s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del emph expand foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb p q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

character data

Note If the example contains material in XML markup, either it must be enclosed within a CDATA marked section, or character entity references must be used to represent the markup delimiters. If the example contains well-formed XML, it should be marked using the more specific <egXML> element.

Example

<p>The <gi>term</gi> element is declared using the following syntax:
<eg><![CDATA[<!ELEMENT term (%phrase.content;)>]]></eg></p>

Content model

<content>
<br macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element eg { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }

<emph> (emphasized) marks words or phrases which are stressed or emphasized for linguistic or rhetorical effect. [3.3.2.2. Emphatic Words and Phrases 3.3.2. Emphasis, Foreign Words, and Unusual Language]

Module core

Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

Member of model.emphLike

Contained by

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expand foreign gloss hi item l label mentioned name note num orig pb p q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

figures: cell figDesc
<encodingDesc>

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor

linking: seg

tagdocs: eg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss

graphic hi index l label lb lg listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure formula table

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

character data

Example

You took the car and did <emph>what</emph>?!!

Example

<q>What it all comes to is this, </q> he said.

<q>
<emph>What does Christopher Robin do in the morning nowadays?</emph>
</q>

Content model

<content>
<macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element emph { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }

<encodingDesc> (encoding description) documents the relationship between an electronic text and the source or sources from which it was derived. 2.3. The Encoding Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components

Module header

Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend)

(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) att.global.analytic (@ana)

(att.global.facs (@facs)) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source

(@source)

Member of model.teiHeaderPart

Contained by

header: teiHeader

May contain

113
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Content model

```
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.encodingDescPart"/>
    <classRef key="model.pLike"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
elementType encodingDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.encodingDescPart | model.pLike )+
}
```

Example

```
<encodingDesc>
  <p>Basic encoding, capturing lexical information only. All
  hyphenation, punctuation, and variant spellings normalized. No
  formatting or layout information preserved.</p>
</encodingDesc>
```

<epigraph> (epigraph) contains a quotation, anonymous or attributed, appearing at
the start or end of a section or on a title page. 4.2.3. Arguments, Epigraphs, and
Postscripts 4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions 4.6. Title Pages

Module textstructure

Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) att.global.analytic (@ana)
(att.global.facas (@facas)) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source
(@source)

Member of model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by
  core: lg list
  figures: figure table
  textstructure: back body div front group opener titlePage

May contain
  analysis: interp interpGrp
  core: bibl cit desc gap index label lb lg listBibl milestone note p pb q sp stage
  figures: figure table
  linking: anchor
  tagdocs: eg

Example

```
<epigraph xml:lang="la">
  <cit>
```
<bibl>Lucret.</bibl>

<quote>
<l part="F">petere inde coronam,\</l>
<l>Vnde prius nulli velarint tempora Musae.</l>
</quote>

<epigraph>

Content model

```
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.common"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
 element epigraph { att.global.attributes, ( model.common | model.global )* } 
```

<expan> (expansion) contains the expansion of an abbreviation. [3.6.5. Abbreviations and Their Expansions]

Module core

Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend))
  (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
  (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source
    (@source)) (att.editLike (@evidence, @instant))

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.editorial

Contained by

analysis: pc s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del desc editor emph
  expan foreign gloss head hi item lb item label mentioned name note num orig pb ptr q ref
  resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder
  language licence principal sponsor

linking: seg

tagdocs: eg

ttextstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
  imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi
  index lb item label mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref resp rs sic soCalled
  term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

header: idno
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

character data

Note  The content of this element should be the expanded abbreviation, usually (but not always) a complete word or phrase. The <ex> element provided by the transcr module may be used to mark up sequences of letters supplied within such an expansion.

If abbreviations are expanded silently, this practice should be documented in the <editorialDecl>, either with a <normalization> element or a <p>.

Example

The address is Southmoor
<choice>
<expan>Road</expan>
<abbr>Rd</abbr>
</choice>

Example

<choice xml:lang="la">
<abbr>Imp</abbr>
<expan>Imp<exerator</ex>
</expan>
</choice>

Content model

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element expan
  {
    att.global.attributes,
    att.editLike.attributes,
    macro.phraseSeq
  }

<extent> (extent) describes the approximate size of a text stored on some carrier medium or of some other object, digital or non-digital, specified in any convenient units. [2.2.3. Type and Extent of File 2.2. The File Description 3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information 10.7.1. Object Description]

Module header

Attributes [att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))]

Member of model.biblPart

Contained by
core: bibl
header: fileDesc
May contain
analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear
figures: figure formula
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code gi ident val
character data
Example

<extent>3200 sentences</extent>
<extent>between 10 and 20 Mb</extent>
<extent>ten 3.5 inch high density diskettes</extent>

Example The <measure> element may be used to supply normalized or machine tractable versions of the size or sizes concerned.

<extent>
<measure unit="MiB" quantity="4.2">About four megabytes</measure>
<measure unit="pages" quantity="245">245 pages of source material</measure>
</extent>

Content model

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration

```xml
element extent { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

<figDesc> (description of figure) contains a brief prose description of the appearance or content of a graphic figure, for use when documenting an image without displaying it. [14.4. Specific Elements for Graphic Images]

Module figures
Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

Contained by figures: figure
May contain core: abbr address bibl choice cit date desc emph expan foreign gloss hi label list listBibl mentioned name num ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title figures: table header: idno
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val
character data

Note This element is intended for use as an alternative to the content of its parent
<figure> element; for example, to display when the image is required but the
equipment in use cannot display graphic images. It may also be used for indexing or
documentary purposes.

Example

```
<figure>
<graphic url="emblem1.png"/>
<head>Emblemi d'Amore</head>
<figDesc>A pair of naked winged cupids, each holding a
flaming torch, in a rural setting.</figDesc>
</figure>
```

Content model

```
<content>
<macroRef key="macro.limitedContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element figDesc { att.global.attributes, macro.limitedContent }
```

<figure> (figure) groups elements representing or containing graphic information such as
an illustration, formula, or figure. [14.4. Specific Elements for Graphic Images]

Module figures

Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) att.global rendition (@rend)
(att.global linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) att.global analytic (@ana)
(att.global.facs (@facs)) att.global responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global source
(@source)) att.placement (@place) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.written (@hand)

Member of model.global

Contained by

analysis: sw

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor emph
expan foreign gloss head hi item label lg list mentioned name note num orig p
pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled sp speaker stage term time title
unclear

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder language licence
principal sponsor

linking: seg

tagdocs: eg

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate
docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph front group imprimatur opener postscript
salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp
Content model

```
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.headLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.common"/>
    <elementRef key="figDesc"/>
    <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
    <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element figure
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.written.attributes,
  {
    model.headLike     | model.common     | figDesc     | model.graphicLike | model.global
  }
}
```

 inade... of an electronic file. [2.2. The File Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]

Module header

Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend))
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facse (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source
(@source))

Contained by

header: teiHeader

May contain

---

<fileDesc> (file description) contains a full bibliographic description of an electronic file. [2.2. The File Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

header:  editionStmt  extent  notesStmt  publicationStmt  seriesStmt  sourceDesc  titleStmt

Note  The major source of information for those seeking to create a catalogue entry or bibliographic citation for an electronic file. As such, it provides a title and statements of responsibility together with details of the publication or distribution of the file, of any series to which it belongs, and detailed bibliographic notes for matters not addressed elsewhere in the header. It also contains a full bibliographic description for the source or sources from which the electronic text was derived.

Example

```xml
<fileDesc>
  <titleStmt>
    <title>The shortest possible TEI document</title>
  </titleStmt>
  <publicationStmt>
    <p>Distributed as part of TEI P5</p>
  </publicationStmt>
  <sourceDesc>
    <p>No print source exists: this is an original digital text</p>
  </sourceDesc>
</fileDesc>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <sequence>
    <elementRef key="titleStmt"/>
    <elementRef key="editionStmt" minOccurs="0"/>
    <elementRef key="extent" minOccurs="0"/>
    <elementRef key="publicationStmt"/>
    <elementRef key="seriesStmt" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <elementRef key="notesStmt" minOccurs="0"/>
    <elementRef key="sourceDesc" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element fileDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  {
    titleStmt, editionStmt?, extent?, publicationStmt, seriesStmt*, notesStmt?,
  },
  sourceDesc+
}
```
<foreign> (foreign) identifies a word or phrase as belonging to some language other than that of the surrounding text. [3.3.2.1. Foreign Words or Expressions]

**Module** core

**Attributes**

att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend))

(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

(att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

**Member of** model.emphLike

**Contained by** analysis:

- abbr
- add
- addrLine
- author
- bibl
- biblScope
- corr
date
del
desc
editor
emph
expan

- foreign
- gloss
- head
- hi
- item
- label
- mentioned
- name
- note
- num
- orig
- p
- pubPlace
- publisher
- q
- ref
- reg
- resp
- rs
- sic
- soCalled
- speaker
- stage
term
time
title

**figures:**

- cell
- figDesc

**header:**

- authority
- catDesc
- change
classCode
- creation
distributor
edition
extent
funder
- language
- licence
- principal
- sponsor

**linking:**

- seg

**tagdocs:**

- eg

**textstructure:**

- byline
closer
dateline
docAuthor
docDate
docEdition
docImprint
imprimatur
open
signed
titled
Part
trailer

**May contain** analysis:

- interp
- interpGrp
- pc
- s
- w

**core:**

- abbr
- add
- address
- choice
cit
corr
date
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
desc
dl
del
dasc
term
time
title

**figures:**

- figure
- formula

**header:**

- idno

**linking:**

- anchor
- seg

**tagdocs:**

- att
- code
- gi
- ident
- val

**character data**

**Note** The global xml:lang attribute should be supplied for this element to identify the language of the word or phrase marked. As elsewhere, its value should be a language tag as defined in 6.1. Language Identification.

This element is intended for use only where no other element is available to mark the phrase or words concerned. The global xml:lang attribute should be used in preference to this element where it is intended to mark the language of the whole of some text element.

The <distinct> element may be used to identify phrases belonging to sublanguages or registers not generally regarded as true languages.

**Example**

This is heathen Greek to you still? Your <foreign xml:lang="la">lapis philosophicus</foreign>?

**Content model**

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

<formula> (formula) contains a mathematical or other formula. [14.2. Formulæ and Mathematical Expressions]

Module figures
Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) att.global.analytic (@ana) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source) att.notated (@notation)

Member of model.graphicLike

Contained by
analysis:

core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope cit corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

figures: cell figure formula table

header:

change distributor edition extent licence

linking:

seg

tagdocs:

textstructure:

byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

core: graphic hi q

figures: formula
core: graphic hi q

character data

Example

<formula notation="tex">$E=mc^2$</formula>

Example

<formula notation="none">E=mc<hi rend="sup">2</hi></formula>

Example

<formula notation="mathml">
<m:math>
  <m:mi>E</m:mi>
  <m:mo>=</m:mo>
  <m:mi>m</m:mi><m:mi>c</m:mi>
</m:row>
</m:math>

122
<front>

Content model

```
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.hiLike"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element formula
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.notated.attributes,
  ( text | model.graphicLike | model.hiLike )* 
}
```

<front> (front matter) contains any prefatory matter (headers, abstracts, title page, prefaces, dedications, etc.) found at the start of a document, before the main body.

4.6. Title Pages 4. Default Text Structure

Module textstructure

Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls)

Contained by
textstructure: text

May contain
analysis: interp interpGrp
core: divGen gap head index lb listBibl milestone note p pb
figures: figure
linking: anchor
textstructure: argument byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph postscript salute signed titlePage titlePart trailer

Note Because cultural conventions differ as to which elements are grouped as front matter and which as back matter, the content models for the <front> and <back> elements are identical.

Example

```
<front>
  <epigraph>
    <quote>Nam Sibyllam quidem Cumis ego ipse oculis meis vidi in ampulla
  ```
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

pendere, et cum illi pueri dicerent: <q xml:lang="grc">Σίβυλλα τί Θέλεις</q>; respondebat illa: <q xml:lang="grc">ἀποθανεῖν θέλω.</q>

Example

Example

Example
with obesity among 2- to 5-year-olds or 6- to 11-year-olds.

CONCLUSIONS:

Personal food insecurity is associated with an increased risk of obesity only in children aged 6 to 11 years. Personal food-insecurity measures may give different results than aggregate food-insecurity measures in children.
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

```
att.declaring.attributes,
  ( (model.frontPart | model.pLike | model.pLike.front | model.global)*,
    
    ( 
      
        model.divLike,
        (model.divLike | model.frontPart | model.global)*
      )
    )
  )?
}
```

\[<\text{funder}>\] (funding body) specifies the name of an individual, institution, or organization responsible for the funding of a project or text. [2.2.1. The Title Statement]

**Module** header

**Attributes**

- `att.global` (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
- `att.global.rendition` (@rend)
- `att.global.linking` (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- `att.global.analytic` (@ana)
- `att.global.facs` (@facs)
- `att.global.responsibility` (@cert, @resp)
- `att.global.source` (@source)
- `att.canonical` (@key, @ref)
- `att.datable` (@period)
- `att.datable.w3c` (when)

**Member of** model.respLike

**Contained by**

- `bibl`
- `editionStmt` `titleStmt`

**May contain**

- `interp` `interpGrp`
- `abbr` `address` `choice` `date` `emph` `expansion` `foreign` `gap` `gloss` `hi` `index` `lb` `mentioned` `milestone` `name` `note` `num` `pb` `ptr` `q` `ref` `rs` `soCalled` `term` `time` `title`

**figures:**

- `figure`

**header:**

- `idno`

**linking:**

- `anchor`

**tagdocs:**

- `att` `code` `gi` `ident` `val`

**character data**

**Note**

Funders provide financial support for a project; they are distinct from sponsors (see element `<sponsor>`), who provide intellectual support and authority.

**Example**

```
<\text{funder}>The National Endowment for the Humanities, an independent federal agency</\text{funder}>
<\text{funder}>Directorate General XIII of the Commission of the European Communities</\text{funder}>
<\text{funder}>The Andrew W. Mellon Foundation</\text{funder}>
<\text{funder}>The Social Sciences and Humanities Research Council of Canada</\text{funder}>
```
Content model

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element funder
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  att.datable.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited
}
```

---

(gap) indicates a point where material has been omitted in a transcription, whether for editorial reasons described in the TEI header, as part of sampling practice, or because the material is illegible, invisible, or inaudible. [3.5.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions]

Module core

Attributes

```
att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend))
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
att.timed (@start, @end) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant)
att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))
```

@reason (reason) gives the reason for omission

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `teidata.enumerated` separated by whitespace

Suggested values include: cancelled (cancelled)
- deleted (deleted)
- editorial (editorial) for features omitted from transcription due to editorial policy
- illegible (illegible)
- inaudible (inaudible)
- irrelevant (irrelevant)
- sampling (sampling)

@agent (agent) in the case of text omitted because of damage, categorizes the cause of the damage, if it can be identified.

Status Optional

Datatype `teidata.enumerated`

Sample values include: rubbing (rubbing) damage results from rubbing of the leaf edges
- mildew (mildew) damage results from mildew on the leaf surface
- smoke (smoke) damage results from smoke

Member of `model.global.edit`

Contained by
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

analysis: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item label lg list mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled sp speaker stage term time title unclear

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor

linking: seg

tagdocs: eg

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

May contain

core: desc

Note The <gap>, <unclear>, and <del> core tag elements may be closely allied in use with the <damage> and <supplied> elements, available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources. See section [11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination] for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.

The <gap> tag simply signals the editors decision to omit or inability to transcribe a span of text. Other information, such as the interpretation that text was deliberately erased or covered, should be indicated using the relevant tags, such as <del> in the case of deliberate deletion.

Example

```xml
<gap quantity="4" unit="chars"
      reason="illegible"/>
```

Example

```xml
<gap quantity="1" unit="essay"
      reason="sampling"/>
```

Example

```xml
<del>
  <gap atLeast="4" atMost="8" unit="chars"
       reason="illegible"/>
</del>
```

Example

```xml
<gap extent="several lines" reason="lost"/>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
           maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.descLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.certLike"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```
Schema Declaration

```
<gi>

element gap
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.timed.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.dimensions.attributes,
  attribute reason
  {
    list
    {
      "cancelled"
      | "deleted"
      | "editorial"
      | "illegible"
      | "inaudible"
      | "irrelevant"
      | "sampling"
    }+
  }?,
  attribute agent { text }?,
  ( model.descLike | model.certLike )*
}
<gi>
```

(element name) contains the name (generic identifier) of an element. [22.
Documentation Elements 22.5. Element Specifications]

Module tagdocs

Attributes

- att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
- att.global.rendition (@rend)
- att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- att.global.analytic (@ana)
- att.global.facs (@facs)
- att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)
- att.global.source (@source)

@scheme supplies the name of the scheme in which this name is defined.

  Status Optional

  Datatype teidata.enumerated

  Sample values include: TEI this element is part of the TEI
  scheme.[Default]

DBK (docbook) this element is part of the Docbook scheme.

XX (unknown) this element is part of an unknown scheme.

Schematron this element is from Schematron.

HTML this element is from the HTML scheme.

Member of model.phrase.xml

Contained by

analysis:

  core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expam foreign
gloss head hi item label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher ref
reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder
language licence principal sponsor

129
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

linking: seg

tagdocs: eg
textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain XSD Name

Example

<p>The <gi>xhtml:li</gi> element is roughly analogous to the <gi>item</gi>

This example shows the use of both a namespace prefix and the scheme attribute as
alternative ways of indicating that the <gi> in question is not a TEI element name:
in practice only one method should be adopted.

Content model

Schema Declaration

<gloss>
(gloss) identifies a phrase or word used to provide a gloss or definition for some
other word or phrase. 3.4.1. Terms and Glosses 22.4.1. Description of Components

Module core

Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend))

att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source

att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev) att.global.analytic (@ana)

att.global.declaring (@decls) att.global.source (@source) att.declaring (@decs) att.translatable (@versionDate) att.typed (@type,

att.global.cReferencing (@cRef)

Member of model.emphLike

Contained by

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan

foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace

publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc category change classCode creation distributor edition extent

funder language licence principal sponsor taxonomy

linking: seg

ntagdocs: eg
textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pe s w

core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi

index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled
term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

header: idno
Note The target and cRef attributes are mutually exclusive.

Example

We may define `<term xml:id="tdpv" rend="sc">discoursal point of view</term>` as `<gloss target="#tdpv">the relationship, expressed through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other addressee, and the fiction.</gloss>`

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element gloss {
    att.global.attributes, 
    att.declaring.attributes, 
    att.translatable.attributes, 
    att.typed.attributes, 
    att.pointing.attributes, 
    att.cReferencing.attributes, 
    macro.phraseSeq}
```

<graphic> (graphic) indicates the location of a graphic or illustration, either forming part of a text, or providing an image of it. [3.10. Graphics and Other Non-textual Components 11.1. Digital Facsimiles]

Module core

Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.media (@width, @height, @scale) att.resourced (@url) att.declaring (@decls) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.graphicLike model.titlepagePart

Contained by

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope cit corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

figures: cell figure formula table

header: change distributor edition extent licence

linking: seg

tagdocs: eg
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePage titlePart trailer

May contain
core: desc

Note The mimeType attribute should be used to supply the MIME media type of the
image specified by the url attribute.

Within the body of a text, a <graphic> element indicates the presence of a graphic
component in the source itself. Within the context of a <facsimile> or
<sourceDoc> element, however, a <graphic> element provides an additional
digital representation of some part of the source being encoded.

Example

<figure>
  <graphic url="fig1.png"/>
  <head>Figure One: The View from the Bridge</head>
  <figDesc> A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the
  foreground, and a
  series of buoys strung out between them. </figDesc>
</figure>

Example

<facsimile>
  <surfaceGrp n="leaf1">
    <surface>
      <graphic url="pagel.png"/>
    </surface>
    <surface>
      <graphic url="page2-highRes.png"/>
      <graphic url="page2-lowRes.png"/>
    </surface>
  </surfaceGrp>
</facsimile>

Example

<facsimile>
  <surfaceGrp n="leaf1" xml:id="spi001">
    <surface xml:id="spi001r">
      <graphic type="normal" subtype="thumbnail" url="spi/thumb/001r.jpg"/>
      <graphic type="normal" subtype="low-res" url="spi/normal/lowRes/001r.jpg"/>
      <graphic type="normal" subtype="high-res" url="spi/normal/highRes/001r.jpg"/>
      <graphic type="high-contrast" subtype="low-res" url="spi/contrast/lowRes/001r.jpg"/>
      <graphic type="high-contrast" subtype="high-res" url="spi/contrast/highRes/001r.jpg"/>
    </surface>
    <surface xml:id="spi001v">
      <graphic type="normal" subtype="thumbnail" url="spi/thumb/001v.jpg"/>
      <graphic type="normal" subtype="low-res" url="spi/normal/lowRes/001v.jpg"/>
      <graphic type="normal" subtype="high-res" url="spi/normal/highRes/001v.jpg"/>
      <graphic type="high-contrast" subtype="low-res" url="spi/contrast/lowRes/001v.jpg"/>
      <graphic type="high-contrast" subtype="high-res" url="spi/contrast/highRes/001v.jpg"/>
    </surface>
  </surfaceGrp>
</facsimile>
<group>

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <classRef key="model.descLike" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element graphic
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.media.attributes,
  att.resourced.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  model.descLike*
}
```

<group> (group) contains the body of a composite text, grouping together a sequence of distinct texts (or groups of such texts) which are regarded as a unit for some purpose, for example the collected works of an author, a sequence of prose essays, etc. [4. Default Text Structure 4.3.1. Grouped Texts 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text]

Module textstructure

Attributes

```xml
att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs)) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source)
att.declaring @decls att.typed (@type, @subtype)
```

Contained by
textstructure: group text

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

core: gap head index lb milestone note pb

figures: figure

linking: anchor

textstructure: argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph group opener

Example

<text>
  <!-- Section on Alexander Pope starts -->
  <front>
    <!-- biographical notice by editor -->
    </front>
    <group>
      <text>
        <!-- first poem -->
      </text>
      <text>
        <!-- second poem -->
      </text>
    </group>
  </text>
  <!-- end of Pope section-->
</text>

Content model

<content>
  <sequence>
    <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
    </alternate>
    <sequence>
      <alternate>
        <elementRef key="text"/>
        <elementRef key="group"/>
      </alternate>
      <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <elementRef key="text"/>
        <elementRef key="group"/>
        <classRef key="model.global"/>
      </alternate>
    </sequence>
    <classRef key="model.divBottom" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element group
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
  ( ( text | group ), ( text | group | model.global )* ),
  model.divBottom*}
<head> (heading) contains any type of heading, for example the title of a section, or the heading of a list, glossary, manuscript description, etc. [4.2.1. Headings and Trailers]

Module core
Attributes:<head>
atts.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (atts.global.rendition (@rend))
(atts.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (atts.global.analytic (@ana))
(atts.global.facs (@facs)) (atts.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (atts.global.source (@source)) (atts.global.analytic (@ana))
(atts.global.typed (@type, @subtype)) (atts.global.placement (@place)) (atts.placement (@place)) (atts.written (@hand))
</head>

Member of: model.headLike model.pLike.front

Contained by:
core: divGen lg list listBibl
figures: figure table

textstructure: argument back body div front group postscript

May contain:
analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expant foreign gap gloss
graphic hi index l label lb lg listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb
ptr q reg rs rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear
figures: figure formula table

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

data

Note The <head> element is used for headings at all levels; software which treats (e.g.) chapter headings, section headings, and list titles differently must determine the proper processing of a <head> element based on its structural position. A <head> occurring as the first element of a list is the title of that list; one occurring as the first element of a <div> is the title of that chapter or section.

Example The most common use for the <head> element is to mark the headings of sections. In older writings, the headings or incipits may be rather longer than usual in modern works. If a section has an explicit ending as well as a heading, it should be marked as a <trailer>, as in this example:

<div1 n="I" type="book">
  <head>In the name of Christ here begins the first book of the ecclesiastical history of Georgius Florentinus, known as Gregory, Bishop of Tours.</head>
  <div type="section">
    <head>In the name of Christ here begins Book I of the history.</head>
    <p>Proposing as I do ...</p>
    <p>From the Passion of our Lord until the death of Saint Martin four hundred and twelve years passed.</p>
    <trailer>Here ends the first Book, which covers five thousand, five hundred and ninety-six years from the beginning of the world down to the death of Saint Martin.</trailer>
  </div>
</div1>
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Example. When headings are not inline with the running text (see e.g. the heading “Secunda conclusio”) they might however be encoded as if. The actual placement in the source document can be captured with the place attribute.

```xml
<div type="subsection">
  <head place="margin">Secunda conclusio</head>
  <p>
    <lb n="1251"/>
    <hi rend="large">Potencia: habitus: et actus: recipiunt speciem ab objectis</supplied>.</supplied>
  </hi>
    <lb n="1252"/>Probatur sic. Omne importans necessariam habitudinem ad proprium
    [...] 
  </p>
</div>
```

Example. The <head> element is also used to mark headings of other units, such as lists:

```xml
With a few exceptions, connectives are equally useful in all kinds of discourse: description, narration, exposition, argument. <list rend="bulleted">
  <head>Connectives</head>
  <item>above</item>
  <item>accordingly</item>
  <item>across from</item>
  <item>adjacent to</item>
  <item>again</item>
  <item>...</item>
</item>
</list>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <textNode/>
    <elementRef key="lg"/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
    <classRef key="model.inter"/>
    <classRef key="model.lLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element head {
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  att.written.attributes,
  text
```
<hi> (highlighted) marks a word or phrase as graphically distinct from the surrounding text, for reasons concerning which no claim is made. [3.3.2.2. Emphatic Words and Phrases 3.3.2. Emphasis, Foreign Words, and Unusual Language]

Module core
Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.written (@hand)

Member of model.hiLike

Contained by
analysis: s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

figures: cell figDesc formula

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor

linking: seg

tagdocs: eg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain
analysis: interp interpGrp pc p s w

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure formula table

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

character data

Example

<hi rend=“gothic”>And this Indenture further witnesseth</hi>
that the said <hi rend=“italic”>Walter Shandy</hi>, merchant,
in consideration of the said intended marriage ...

Content model

<content>
  <macroRef key=“macro.paraContent”/>
</content>

Schema Declaration
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

**<ident>** (identifier) contains an identifier or name for an object of some kind in a formal language. **<ident>** is used for tokens such as variable names, class names, type names, function names etc. in formal programming languages. [22.1.1. Phrase Level Terms]

**Module**: tagdocs

**Attributes**

- `@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:space`
- `@xml:id` (att.global.rendition (@rend))
- `@xml:lang` (att.global.rnd (@rend))
- `@xml:space` (att.global.rnd (@rend))
- `@corresp`, `@next`, `@prev`
- `@corresp`, `@next`, `@prev`
- `@ana`
- `@ana`
- `@facs`
- `@facs`
- `@cert`, `@resp`
- `@cert`, `@resp`
- `@source`
- `@source`
- `@type`, `@subtype`
- `@type`, `@subtype`

**Member of** model.emphLike

**Contained by**

**analysis**: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan

- foreign
gloss head hi item label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace

- q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title

**figures**: cell figDesc

**header**: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder

- language licence principal sponsor

**linking**: seg

**tagdocs**: eg

**textstructure**: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

- imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

**May contain** Character data only

**Note** In running prose, this element may be used for any kind of identifier in any formal language. It should not be used for element and attribute names in XML, for which the special elements `<gi>` and `<att>` are provided.

**Example**

```
<ident type="ns">http://www.tei-c.org/ns/Examples</ident>
```

**Content model**: `<content> <textNode/></content>`

**Schema Declaration**

```
<ident { att.global.attributes, att.typed.attributes, text }
```

**<idno>** (identifier) supplies any form of identifier used to identify some object, such as a bibliographic item, a person, a title, an organization, etc. in a standardized way. [13.3.1. Basic Principles 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 2.2.5. The Series Statement 3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]

**Module**: header

**Attributes**

- `@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:space`
- `@xml:id` (att.global.rendition (@rend))
- `@xml:lang` (att.global.rnd (@rend))
- `@xml:space` (att.global.rnd (@rend))
- `@corresp`, `@next`, `@prev`
- `@corresp`, `@next`, `@prev`
- `@ana`
- `@ana`
- `@facs`
- `@facs`
- `@cert`, `@resp`
- `@cert`, `@resp`
- `@source`
- `@source`
@type categorizes the identifier, for example as an ISBN, Social Security number, etc.

**Derived from** att.typed

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.enumerated

*Suggested values include:*

- **ISBN** International Standard Book Number: a 13- or (if assigned prior to 2007) 10-digit identifying number assigned by the publishing industry to a published book or similar item, registered with the International ISBN Agency.

- **ISSN** International Standard Serial Number: an eight-digit number to uniquely identify a serial publication.

- **DOI** Digital Object Identifier: a unique string of letters and numbers assigned to an electronic document.

- **URI** Uniform Resource Identifier: a string of characters to uniquely identify a resource, following the syntax of RFC 3986.

- **VIAF** A data number in the Virtual Internet Authority File assigned to link different names in catalogs around the world for the same entity.

- **ESTC** English Short-Title Catalogue number: an identifying number assigned to a document in English printed in the British Isles or North America before 1801.

- **OCLC** OCLC control number (record number) for the union catalog record in WorldCat, a union catalog for member libraries in the Online Computer Library Center global cooperative.

*Member of* model.nameLike model.publicationStmtPart.detail

*Contained by* analysis

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expand foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig pubPlace publisher q ref reg res rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder idno language licence principal publicationStmt seriesStmt sponsor

*linking:* seg

*tagdocs:* eg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*header:* idno

*character data*

*Note* `<idno>` should be used for labels which identify an object or concept in a formal cataloguing system such as a database or an RDF store, or in a distributed system such as the World Wide Web. Some suggested values for `type` on `<idno>` are ISBN, ISSN, DOI, and URI.

*Example*
In the last case, the identifier includes a non-Unicode character which is defined elsewhere by means of a <glyph> or <char> element referenced here as #sym.

**Content model**

```xml
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <TextNode/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <elementRef key="idno"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```xml
element idno
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  att.datable.attributes,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  attribute type
  {
    "ISBN" | "ISSN" | "DOI" | "URI" | "VIAF" | "ESTC" | "OCLC"
  },
  ( text | model.gLike | idno )*
}
```

**<imprimatur>** (imprimatur) contains a formal statement authorizing the publication of a work, sometimes required to appear on a title page or its verso. [4.6. Title Pages]

**Module textstructure**

**Attributes**

- att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
- att.global.rendition (@rend)
- att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- att.global.analytic (@ana)
- att.global.facet (@facets)
- att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)
- att.global.source (@source)

**Member of** model.titlepagePart

**Contained by**

- titlePage

**May contain**

- analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
<index>

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
<imprimatur> Licensed and entered according to Order. </imprimatur>
```

Example

```
<imprimatur> Licensed and entered according to Order. </imprimatur>
```

<index> (index entry) marks a location to be indexed for whatever purpose.

3.9.2 Index Entries

Module core

Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend) att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source) att.spanning (@spanTo)

@indexName a single word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see https://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name), supplying a name to specify which index (of several) the index entry belongs to.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.name

Note This attribute makes it possible to create multiple indexes for a text.

Member of model.global.meta

Contained by

analysis: sw

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del desc emph expand foreign gloss head hi index item label lg list bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor emph expand foreign gloss head hi index item label lg list mentioned name note num orig ph pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled sp speaker stage term time title unclear

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor

linking: seg

tagdocs: eg

141
David's other principal backer, Josiah ha-Kohen

Example

Content model

```
<content>
  <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <elementRef key="term"/>
    <elementRef key="index" minOccurs="0"/>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element index
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  attribute indexName { text }?,
  ( term, index? )* 
}
```

<interp> (interpretation) summarizes a specific interpretative annotation which can be linked to a span of text. [17.3. Spans and Interpretations]

Module analysis

Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend) att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.facilities (@facs) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source) att.interpLike (@type, @subtype, @inst)

Member of model.global.meta

Contained by

analysis: interpGrp s w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblioScope cit corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label lg list mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled sp speaker stage term time title unclear

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor
Generally, each `<interp>` element carries an `xml:id` attribute. This permits the encoder to explicitly associate the interpretation represented by the content of an `<interp>` with any textual element through its `ana` attribute. Alternatively (or, in addition) an `<interp>` may carry an `inst` attribute that points to one or more textual elements to which the analysis represented by the content of the `<interp>` applies.

Example

```
<interp type="structuralunit"
   xml:id="ana_am">aftermath</interp>
```

Content model

```
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.descLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.certLike"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element interp
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.interpLike.attributes,
   ( text | model.gLike | model.descLike | model.certLike )*
}
```

`<interpGrp>` (interpretation group) collects together a set of related interpretations which share responsibility or type. [17.3. Spans and Interpretations]
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

content:
  abbr  add  addrLine  address  author  bibl  biblScope  cit  corr  date  del  editor  emph  
  expant  foreign  gloss  head  hi  item  l  label  lg  list  mentioned  name  note  num  orig  p  
  pubPlace  publisher  q  ref  reg  resp  rs  sic  soCalled  sp  speaker  stage  term  time  title  
  unclear

figures:  cell  figure  table

header:
  authority  change  classCode  distributor  edition  extent  funder  language  licence  
  principal  sponsor

linking:
  seg

tagdocs:
  eg

textstructure:
  argument  back  body  byline  closer  dateline  div  docAuthor  docDate  
  docEdition  docImprint  docTitle  epigraph  front  group  imprimatur  opener  postscript  
  salute  signed  text  titlePage  titlePart  trailer

May contain
analysis:  interp

core:  desc

Note Any number of < interp > elements.

Example

< interpGrp  resp="#TMA"  
  type="structuralunit">  
  < desc > basic structural organization </ desc >  
  < interp xml:id="I1"> introduction </ interp >  
  < interp xml:id="I2"> conflict </ interp >  
  < interp xml:id="I3"> climax </ interp >  
  < interp xml:id="I4"> revenge </ interp >  
  < interp xml:id="I5"> reconciliation </ interp >  
  < interp xml:id="I6"> aftermath </ interp >  
  </ interpGrp >  
  < bibl xml:id="TMA">  
  <!-- bibliographic citation for source of this 
  interpretive framework -->  
  </ bibl >

Content model

< content >  
  < sequence >  
    < classRef key="model.descLike"  
      minOccurs="0"  maxOccurs="unbounded"/>  
    < elementRef key=" interp" minOccurs="1"  
      maxOccurs="unbounded"/>  
  </ sequence >  
</ content >

Schema Declaration

element interpGrp
{  
  att.global.attributes,  
  att.interpLike.attributes,  
  ( model.descLike*, interp+ )  
}

<i tem >  (item) contains one component of a list.  

3.8. Lists  2.6. The Revision Description
**Module core**

**Attributes**
- `att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)`
- `att.global.rendition (@rend)`
- `att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)`
- `att.global.analytic (@ana)`
- `att.global.facs (@facs)`
- `att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)`
- `att.global.source (@source)`
- `att.sortable (@sortKey)`

**Contained by**
- `core: list`

**May contain**
- `analysis: interp interpGrp pe s w`
- `core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear`
- `figures: figure formula table`
- `header: idno`
- `linking: anchor seg`
- `tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val`

**Note**
May contain simple prose or a sequence of chunks.

Whatever string of characters is used to label a list item in the copy text may be used as the value of the global `n` attribute, but it is not required that numbering be recorded explicitly. In ordered lists, the `n` attribute on the `<item>` element is by definition synonymous with the use of the `<label>` element to record the enumerator of the list item. In glossary lists, however, the term being defined should be given with the `<label>` element, not `n`.

**Example**

```xml
<list rend="numbered">
  <head>Here begin the chapter headings of Book IV</head>
  <item n="4.1">The death of Queen Clotild.</item>
  <item n="4.2">How King Lothar wanted to appropriate one third of the Church revenues.</item>
  <item n="4.3">The wives and children of Lothar.</item>
  <item n="4.4">The Counts of the Bretons.</item>
  <item n="4.5">Saint Gall the Bishop.</item>
  <item n="4.6">The priest Cato.</item>
  ...</list>
```

**Content model**

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```xml
element item
{   
  att.global.attributes, 
  att.sortable.attributes, 
  macro.specialPara}
```
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

<keywords> (keywords) contains a list of keywords or phrases identifying the topic or nature of a text. [2.4.3. The Text Classification]

Module header
Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend))
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

@scheme identifies the controlled vocabulary within which the set of keywords concerned is defined, for example by a <taxonomy> element, or by some other resource.

Status Optional
Datatype teldata.pointer

Contained by: textClass
May contain core: list term

Note Each individual keyword (including compound subject headings) should be supplied as a <term> element directly within the <keywords> element. An alternative usage, in which each <term> appears within an <item> inside a <list> is permitted for backwards compatibility, but is deprecated.

If no control list exists for the keywords used, then no value should be supplied for the scheme attribute.

Example

<keywords scheme="http://classificationweb.net">
  <term>Babbage, Charles</term>
  <term>Mathematicians - Great Britain - Biography</term>
</keywords>

Example

<keywords>
  <term>Fermented beverages</term>
  <term>Central Andes</term>
  <term>Schinus molle</term>
  <term>Molle beer</term>
  <term>Indigenous peoples</term>
  <term>Ethnography</term>
  <term>Archaeology</term>
</keywords>

Content model

<content>
  <alternate>
    <elementRef key="term" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </alternate>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element keywords
(verse line) contains a single, possibly incomplete, line of verse. 3.13.1. Core Tags for Verse 3.13. Passages of Verse or Drama 7.2.5. Speech Contents

Module core
Attributes
att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) (att.fragmentable (@part))

Member of model.Like

Contained by
core: add corr del emph head hi item lg note p q ref reg sic sp stage title unclear
figures: cell figure
header: change licence
linking: seg
textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain
analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear
figures: figure formula table
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

character data
c

Example

<l met="x/x/x/x/x/" real="/xx/x/x/x/x/">Shall I compare thee to a summer’s day?</l>

Schematron <sch:report test="ancestor::tei:l[not(./tei:note/tei:l[. = current()])]">
Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain lines or lg elements. </sch:report>

Content model

<content>
<alternate minOccurs="0"
maxOccurs="unbounded">
<textNode/>
<classRef key="model.gLike"/>
<classRef key="model.phrase"/>
<classRef key="model.inter"/>
<classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
</content>
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Schema Declaration

```xml
element l
{
    att.global.attributes,
    att.fragmentable.attributes,
    (text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.inter | model.global)*
}
```

<label> (label) contains any label or heading used to identify part of a text, typically but not exclusively in a list or glossary. [3.8. Lists]

Module core
Attributes
```xml
att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend))
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
(att.typed (@type, @subtype)) att.placement (@place) att.written (@hand)
```

Member of model.labelLike

Contained by
```xml
core: add corr del desc emph head hi item l lg list note orig p q ref reg sic stage title unclear
figures: cell figDesc figure
header: change licence
linking: seg
textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer
```

May contain
```xml
analysis: interp interpGrp pe s w
core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear
figures: figure formula
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code gi ident val
```

Example Labels are commonly used for the headwords in glossary lists; note the use of the global xml:lang attribute to set the default language of the glossary list to Middle English, and identify the glosses and headings as modern English or Latin:

```xml
<list type="gloss" xml:lang="enm">
    <head xml:lang="en">Vocabulary</head>
    <headLabel xml:lang="en">Middle English</headLabel>
    <headItem xml:lang="en">New English</headItem>
    <label>nu</label>
    <item xml:lang="en">now</item>
    <label>lhude</label>
    <item xml:lang="en">loudly</item>
    <label>bloweth</label>
    <item xml:lang="en">blooms</item>
    <label>med</label>
    <item xml:lang="en">meadow</item>
</list>
```
Labels may also be used to record explicitly the numbers or letters which mark list items in ordered lists, as in this extract from Gibbon’s *Autobiography*. In this usage the `<label>` element is synonymous with the `n` attribute on the `<item>` element:

```xml
例
I will add two facts, which have seldom occurred in the composition of six, or at least of five quartos.

```xml
例
My first rough manuscript, without any intermediate copy, has been sent to the press.

```xml
例
Not a sheet has been seen by any human eyes, excepting those of the author and the printer: the faults and the merits are exclusively my own.

```xml
例

Labels may also be used for other structured list items, as in this extract from the journal of Edward Gibbon:

```xml
例
March 1757.

```xml
例
I wrote some critical observations upon Plautus.

```xml
例
March 8th.

```xml
例
I wrote a long dissertation upon some lines of Virgil.

```xml
例
June.

```xml
例
I saw Mademoiselle Curchod — *Omnia vincit amor, et nos cedamus amori.*

```xml
例
August.

```xml
例
I went to Crassy, and staid two days.

```xml
Example Labels may also be used to represent a label or heading attached to a paragraph or sequence of paragraphs not treated as a structural division, or to a group of verse lines. Note that, in this case, the `<label>` element appears within the `<p>` or `<lg>` element, rather than as a preceding sibling of it.

Note that the `<label>` might also appear within the `<item>` rather than as its sibling. Though syntactically valid, this usage is not recommended TEI practice.

Example Labels may also be used to represent a label or heading attached to a paragraph or sequence of paragraphs not treated as a structural division, or to a group of verse lines. Note that, in this case, the `<label>` element appears within the `<p>` or `<lg>` element, rather than as a preceding sibling of it.
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

In this example the text of the label appears in the right hand margin of the original source, next to the paragraph it describes, but approximately in the middle of it. If so desired the *type* attribute may be used to distinguish different categories of label.

**Content model**

```xml
<content>
<macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```xml
element label {
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  att.written.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq
}
```

**<langUsage>** (language usage) describes the languages, sublanguages, registers, dialects, etc., represented within a text. [2.4.2. Language Usage][2.4.2. Language Usage] 2.4. The Profile Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements

**Module header**

Attributes

- `attr_global` (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (attr.global.rendition (@rend))
  - (attr.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (attr.global.analytic (@ana))
  - (attr.global.facis (@facis)) (attr.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (attr.global.source (@source)) (attr.declarable (@default))

**Member of** model.profileDescPart

**Contained by**

- header: profileDesc

**May contain**

- core: `p`

**header:** `language`

**Example**

```xml
<langUsage>
  <language ident="fr-CA" usage="60">Québécois</language>
</langUsage>
```
<language ident="en-CA" usage="20">Canadian business English</language>

<language ident="en-GB" usage="20">British English</language>

Content model

```
<content>
  <alternator>
    <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <elementRef key="language" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </alternator>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element langUsage
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | language+ )
}
```

<language> (language) characterizes a single language or sublanguage used within a text. [2.4.2. Language Usage]

Module: header

Attributes
- **att.global** (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend))
  (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
  (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
- **@ident** (identifier) Supplies a language code constructed as defined in BCP 47 which is used to identify the language documented by this element, and which is referenced by the global xml:lang attribute.
  Status: Required
  Datatype: teidata.language
- **@usage** specifies the approximate percentage (by volume) of the text which uses this language.
  Status: Optional
  Datatype: nonNegativeInteger

Contained by: langUsage

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp
core: abbr address choice date emph expand foreign gap gloss hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr q ref rs soCalled term time title

figures: figure
header: idno
linking: anchor
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

**tagdocs:**
- `att`
- `code`
- `ident`
- `val`

**character data**

**Note** Particularly for sublanguages, an informal prose characterization should be supplied as content for the element.

**Example**

```
<langUsage>
  <language ident="en-US" usage="75">modern American English</language>
  <language ident="i-az-Arab" usage="20">Azerbaijani in Arabic script</language>
  <language ident="x-lap" usage="05">Pig Latin</language>
</langUsage>
```

**Content model**

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```
element language
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute ident { text },
  attribute usage { text }?,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited
}
```

**<lb>** (line beginning) marks the beginning of a new (typographic) line in some edition or version of a text. [3.11.3. Milestone Elements 7.2.5. Speech Contents]

**Module core**

- `att.global` (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
- `att.global.rendition` (@rend)
- `att.global.linking` (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- `att.global.analytic` (@ana)
- `att.global.responsibility` (@cert, @resp)
- `att.global.source` (@source)
- `att.typed` (@type, @subtype)
- `att.edition` (@ed, @edRef)
- `att.spanning` (@spanTo)
- `att.breaking` (@break)

**Member of** `model.milestoneLike`

**Contained by**

- `sw`
- `s`

- `abbr`, `add`, `addrLine`, `address`, `author`, `bibl`, `biblScope`, `cit`, `corr`, `date`, `del`, `editor`, `emph`, `expan`, `foreign`, `gloss`, `head`, `hi`, `item`, `label`, `lg`, `list`, `listBibl`, `mentioned`, `name`, `note`, `num`, `orig`, `p`, `pubPlace`, `publisher`, `q`, `ref`, `reg`, `resp`, `rs`, `sic`, `soCalled`, `sp`, `speaker`, `stage`, `term`, `time`, `title`

- `unclear`

- `cell`, `figure`, `table`

- `authority`, `change`, `classCode`, `distributor`, `edition`, `extent`, `funder`, `language`, `licence`, `principal`, `sponsor`

- `seg`

- `eg`

- `argument`, `back`, `body`, `byline`, `closer`, `dateline`, `div`, `docAuthor`, `docDate`, `docEdition`, `docImprint`, `docTitle`, `epigraph`, `front`, `group`, `imprimatur`, `opener`, `postscript`, `salute`, `signed`, `text`, `titlePage`, `titlePart`, `trailer`

152
May contain Empty element

Note By convention, <lb> elements should appear at the point in the text where a new line starts. The n attribute, if used, indicates the number or other value associated with the text between this point and the next <lb> element, typically the sequence number of the line within the page, or other appropriate unit. This element is intended to be used for marking actual line breaks on a manuscript or printed page, at the point where they occur; it should not be used to tag structural units such as lines of verse (for which the <l> element is available) except in circumstances where structural units cannot otherwise be marked.

The type attribute may be used to characterize the line break in any respect. The more specialized attributes break, ed, or edRef should be preferred when the intent is to indicate whether or not the line break is word-breaking, or to note the source from which it derives.

Example This example shows typographical line breaks within metrical lines, where they occur at different places in different editions:

<lb>Of Mans First Disobedience, <lb ed="1674"/> and <lb ed="1667"/> the Fruit</lb>
<lb>Of that Forbidden Tree, whose <lb ed="1667 1674"/> mortal tast</lb>
<lb>Brought Death into the World, <lb ed="1667"/> and all <lb ed="1674"/> our woe.</lb>

Example This example encodes typographical line breaks as a means of preserving the visual appearance of a title page. The break attribute is used to show that the line break does not (as elsewhere) mark the start of a new word.

<titlePart>
<lb/>With Additions, ne. <lb break="no"/>ver before Printed.
</titlePart>

Content model
<content> <empty/> </content>

Schema Declaration

```xml
<element lb {
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.edition.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  att.breaking.attributes,
  empty
}
```

<lg> (line group) contains one or more verse lines functioning as a formal unit, e.g. a stanza, refrain, verse paragraph, etc. 3.13.1. Core Tags for Verse 3.13. Passages of Verse or Drama 7.2.5. Speech Contents

Module core
Attributes  att.global (@id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.divLike (@org, @sample) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declaring (@decls)

Member of model.divPart model.paraPart
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Contained by
core: add, corr, del, emph, head, hi, item, lg, note, orig, p, q, ref, reg, sic, sp, stage, title, unclear
figures: cell, figure
header: change, licence
linking: seg

textstructure: argument, body, div, docEdition, epigraph, imprimatur, postscript, salute, signed, titlePart, trailer

May contain
analysis: interp, interpGrp
core: add, corr, del, desc, gap, head, index, label, lb, lg, milestone, note, orig, pb, reg, sic, stage, unclear
figures: figure
linking: anchor
textstructure: argument, byline, closer, dateline, docAuthor, docDate, epigraph, opener, postscript, salute, signed, trailer

Note contains verse lines or nested line groups only, possibly prefixed by a heading.
Example

<lg type="free">
  <l>Let me be my own fool</l>
  <l>of my own making, the sum of it</l>
</lg>

<Sch:assert test="count(descendant::tei:lg|descendant::tei:l|descendant::tei:gap) > 0">An lg element must contain at least one child l, lg, or gap element.</Sch:assert>

Schematron

<Sch:report test="ancestor::tei:l[not(.//tei:note//tei:lg[. = current()])]">
  Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain line groups.
</Sch:report>

Content model

<content>
  <sequence>
    <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
    </alternate>
    <alternate>
      <classRef key="model.lLike"/>
      <classRef key="model.stageLike"/>
      <classRef key="model.labellike"/>
      <classRef key="model.pPart.transcriptional"/>
      <elementRef key="lg"/>
    </alternate>
    <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.lLike"/>
      <classRef key="model.stageLike"/>
    </alternate>
  </sequence>
</content>
Schema Declaration

```xml
<licence>
  <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.pPart.transcriptional"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
  <elementRef key="lg"/>
</alternate>
<sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
  <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</content>

<licence> contains information about a licence or other legal agreement applicable to the text. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]

Module header

Attributes

`att.global` (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.datable (@period) (att.datable.w3c (@when))

Member of `model.availabilityPart`

Contained by `availability`

May contain

- analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
- core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear
- figures: figure formula table
- header: idno
- linking: anchor seg
- tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

155
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

character data

Note A <licence> element should be supplied for each licence agreement applicable to the text in question. The target attribute may be used to reference a full version of the licence. The when, notBefore, notAfter, from or to attributes may be used in combination to indicate the date or dates of applicability of the licence.

Example

```xml
<licence target="http://www.nzetc.org/tm/scholarly/tei-NZETC-Help.html#licensing">
  Licence: Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 3.0 New Zealand Licence
</licence>
```

Example

```xml
<availability>
  <licence target="http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0/"
    notBefore="2013-01-01">
    <p>The Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 Unported (CC BY 3.0) Licence applies to this document.</p>
    <p>The licence was added on January 1, 2013.</p>
  </licence>
</availability>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element licence
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.datable.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}
```

<list> (list) contains any sequence of items organized as a list. [3.8. Lists]

Module core

Attributes

| **att.global** | (xml:id, @n, xml:lang, xml:space) (att.global.rendition (rend))
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>att.global.facs</td>
<td>(facsimile)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.linking</td>
<td>(@corresp, @next, @prev) (att.global.analytic (@ana))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.responsibility</td>
<td>(cert, @resp) (att.global.source (@source))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.sortable</td>
<td>(sortKey) att.typed (type, @subtype)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

@type (type) describes the nature of the items in the list.

Derived from att.typed

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Suggested values include: gloss (gloss) each list item glosses some term or concept, which is given by a <label> element preceding the list item.

index (index) each list item is an entry in an index such as the alphabetical topical index at the back of a print volume.
instructions (instructions) each list item is a step in a sequence of instructions, as in a recipe.

litany (litany) each list item is one of a sequence of petitions, supplications or invocations, typically in a religious ritual.

syllogism (syllogism) each list item is part of an argument consisting of two or more propositions and a final conclusion derived from them.

Note Previous versions of these Guidelines recommended the use of type on <list> to encode the rendering or appearance of a list (whether it was bulleted, numbered, etc.). The current recommendation is to use the rend or style attributes for these aspects of a list, while using type for the more appropriate task of characterizing the nature of the content of a list.

The formal syntax of the element declarations allows <label> tags to be omitted from lists tagged <list type="gloss">; this is however a semantic error.

Example

```xml
<list rend="numbered">
  <item>a butcher</item>
  <item>a baker</item>
  <item>a candlestick maker, with
    <list rend="bulleted">
      <item>rings on his fingers</item>
      <item>bells on his toes</item>
    </list>
  </item>
</list>
```

Example

```xml
<list type="syllogism" rend="bulleted">
  <item>All Cretans are liars.</item>
  <item>Epimenides is a Cretan.</item>
</list>
```
ERGO Epimenides is a liar.

Example

God save us from drought.
God save us from pestilence.
God save us from wickedness in high places.
Praise be to God.

Example The following example treats the short numbered clauses of Anglo-Saxon legal codes as lists of items. The text is from an ordinance of King Athelstan (924–939):

Concerning thieves. First, that no thief is to be spared who is caught with the stolen goods, [if he is] over twelve years and [if the value of the goods is] over eightpence.

And if anyone does spare one, he is to pay for the thief with his wergild — and the thief is to be no nearer a settlement on that account — or to clear himself by an oath of that amount.

If, however, he [the thief] wishes to defend himself or to escape, he is not to be spared [whether younger or older than twelve].

If a thief is put into prison, he is to be in prison 40 days, and he may then be redeemed with 120 shillings; and the kindred are to stand surety for him that he will desist for ever.

And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him with his wergild, or to bring him back there.

And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him with his wergild, whether to the king or to him to whom it rightly belongs; and everyone of those who supported him is to pay 120 shillings to the king as a fine.

Concerning lordless men. And we pronounced about these lordless men, from whom no justice can be obtained, that one should order their kindred to fetch back such a person to justice and to find him a lord in public meeting.

And if they then will not, or cannot, produce him on that appointed day, he is then to be a fugitive afterwards, and he who encounters him is to strike him down as a thief.

And he who harbours him after that, is to pay for him with his wergild.
or to clear himself by an oath of that amount.</tt>

<list>
  <item n="3">Concerning the refusal of justice. The lord who refuses justice and upholds his guilty man, so that the king is appealed to, is to repay the value of the goods and 120 shillings to the king; and he who appeals to the king before he demands justice as often as he ought, is to pay the same fine as the other would have done, if he had refused him justice.<list rend="numbered">
    <item n="3.1">And the lord who is an accessory to a theft by his slave, and it becomes known about him, is to forfeit the slave and be liable to his wergild on the first occasion if he does it more often, he is to be liable to pay all that he owns.</item>
    <item n="3.2">And likewise any of the king's treasurers or of our reeves, who has been an accessory of thieves who have committed theft, is to liable to the same.</item>
  </list>
</item>

Concerning treachery to a lord. And we have pronounced concerning treachery to a lord, that he [who is accused] is to forfeit his life if he cannot deny it or is afterwards convicted at the three-fold ordeal.</tt>

Note that nested lists have been used so the tagging mirrors the structure indicated by the two-level numbering of the clauses. The clauses could have been treated as a one-level list with irregular numbering, if desired.

Example

<tt>These decrees, most blessed Pope Hadrian, we propounded in the public council ... and they confirmed them in our hand in your stead with the sign of the Holy Cross, and afterwards inscribed with a careful pen on the paper of this page, affixing thus the sign of the Holy Cross.

<list rend="simple">
  <item>I, Eanbald, by the grace of God archbishop of the holy church of York, have subscribed to the pious and catholic validity of this document with the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Ælfwold, king of the people across the Humber, consenting have subscribed with the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Tilberht, prelate of the church of Hexham, rejoicing have subscribed with the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Higbald, bishop of the church of Lindisfarne, obeying have subscribed with the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Ethelbert, bishop of Candida Casa, suppliant, have subscribed</item>
</list>
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

with the sign of
the Holy Cross.</item>
<item>I, Ealdwulf, bishop of the church of Mayo, have subscribed with
devout will.</item>
<item>I, Æthelwine, bishop, have subscribed through delegates.</item>
<item>I, Sicga, patrician, have subscribed with serene mind with the
sign of the Holy
Cross.</item>
</list>
</p>

Schema Declaration

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:list[@type='gloss']">
  <sch:assert test="tei:label">The content of a "gloss" list should include a sequence of one or more pairs of a label element followed by an item element</sch:assert>
</sch:rule>

Content model

<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
    <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0"
      maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </alternate>
  <alternate>
    <sequence minOccurs="1"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <elementRef key="item"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"
        minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
    <sequence>
      <elementRef key="headLabel"
        minOccurs="0"/>
      <elementRef key="headItem"
        minOccurs="0"/>
      <sequence minOccurs="1"
        maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <elementRef key="label"/>
        <classRef key="model.global"
          minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <elementRef key="item"/>
        <classRef key="model.global"
          minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </sequence>
    </sequence>
    <alternate>
      <sequence minOccurs="0"
        maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
        <classRef key="model.global"
          minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </sequence>
    </alternate>
  </alternate>
</content>

Schema Declaration
3.12.1 Methods of Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References
15.3.2 Declarable Elements

(citation list) contains a list of bibliographic citations of any kind. Section 3.12.1 Methods of Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References 2.2.7 The Source Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements

Module core
Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend) att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.declarable (@default) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.biblLike model.frontPart

Contained by
core:  add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l listBibl note orig p q ref reg relatedItem sic stage title unclear figures:  cell figDesc figure header:  change licence sourceDesc taxonomy linking:  seg
textstructure:  argument back body div docEdition epigraph front imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain
core:  bibl desc head lb listBibl milestone pb

Example

<listBibl>
  <head>Works consulted</head>
  <bibl>Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to Literature in English (Yale, 1990)
</bibl>
Content model

<sequence>
    <classRef key="model.headLike" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <classRef key="model.milestoneLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
        <elementRef key="relation" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
        <elementRef key="listRelation" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
    </alternate>
    <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <classRef key="model.milestoneLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
            <classRef key="model.milestoneLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
            <elementRef key="relation" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
            <elementRef key="listRelation" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
        </alternate>
    </sequence>
    <sequence>
</sequence>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element listBibl
{
    att.global.attributes,
    att.sortable.attributes,
    att.declarable.attributes,
    att.typed.attributes,
    ( model.headLike*,
      desc*,
      ( model.milestoneLike | relation | listRelation )*,
There is thus a striking accentual difference between a verbal form like
<mentioned xmlns:id="X234" xmlns:lang="el">eluthemen</mentioned>
<gloss target="#X234">we were released</gloss> accented on the second syllable of the word, and its participial derivative
<mentioned xmlns:id="X235" xmlns:lang="el">lutheis</mentioned>
<gloss target="#X235">released</gloss> accented on the last.
<milestone> (milestone) marks a boundary point separating any kind of section of a text, typically but not necessarily indicating a point at which some part of a standard reference system changes, where the change is not represented by a structural element. [3.11.3. Milestone Elements]

Module core

Attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>@xml:id</td>
<td>Unique identifier for the milestone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@n</td>
<td>Number or other value for the unit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@xml:lang</td>
<td>Language indicator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@xml:space</td>
<td>White space indicator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@rend</td>
<td>Rendition indicator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@corresp</td>
<td>Correspondence indicator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@next</td>
<td>Next indicator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@prev</td>
<td>Previous indicator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@cert</td>
<td>Certification indicator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@resp</td>
<td>Responsibility indicator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@source</td>
<td>Source indicator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@unit</td>
<td>Unit indicator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@type</td>
<td>Type indicator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@subtype</td>
<td>Subtype indicator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@ed</td>
<td>Edition indicator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@edRef</td>
<td>Edition reference indicator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@spanTo</td>
<td>Span To indicator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@break</td>
<td>Breaking indicator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@unit</td>
<td>Unit indicator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@type</td>
<td>Type indicator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@subtype</td>
<td>Subtype indicator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@ed</td>
<td>Edition indicator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@edRef</td>
<td>Edition reference indicator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@spanTo</td>
<td>Span To indicator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@break</td>
<td>Breaking indicator.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by

Analysis: s w

Core:

abbr add addrLine address author biblio biblScope cit corr date del editor emph expand foreign gloss head hi item1 label lg list listBibl mentioned name note num origin p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled sp speaker stage term time title unclear

Figures:

cell figure table

Header:

authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor

Linking:

seg

tagdocs: eg

textstructure:

argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

May contain Empty element

Note For this element, the global n attribute indicates the new number or other value for the unit which changes at this milestone. The special value unnumbered should be used in passages which fall outside the normal numbering scheme, such as chapter or other headings, poem numbers or titles, etc.

The order in which <milestone> elements are given at a given point is not normally significant.

Example

```xml
<milestone n="23" ed="La" unit="Dreissiger"/>
... <milestone n="24" ed="AV" unit="verse"/> ...
```

Content model <content> <empty/></content>

Schema Declaration

```xml
element milestone {
```
(name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase.  

### 3.6.1. Referring Strings

#### Module core

Attributes

- `att.global` (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend))
- `att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)` (att.global.analytic (@ana))
- `att.global.facu (@facu)` (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
- `att.personal (@full, @sort)` (att.naming (@role, @nymRef)) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))
- `att.datable (@period)` (att.datable.w3c (@when))
- `att.editLike (@evidence, @instant)`
- `att.typed (@type, @subtype)`

Member of `model.nameLike.agent`

### Contained by

- `analysis:`
  - `core:`
    - abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph
    - expan foreign gloss head hi item label mentioned name note num orig pb pubPlace
    - q ref reg resp respStmt rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear
  - `figures:`
    - cell figDesc
  - `header:`
    - authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder
    - language licence principal sponsor
  - `linking:`
    - seg
  - `tagdocs:`
    - eg
  - `textstructure:`
    - byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
    - imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

### May contain

- `analysis:`
  - `core:`
    - abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi
    - index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled
    - term time title unclear
  - `figures:`
    - figure formula
  - `header:`
    - idno
  - `linking:`
    - anchor seg
  - `tagdocs:`
    - att code gi ident val

Character data

**Note** Proper nouns referring to people, places, and organizations may be tagged instead with `<persName>`, `<placeName>`, or `<orgName>`, when the TEI module for names and dates is included.

**Example**

```
<name type="person">Thomas Hoccleve</name>
<name type="place">Villingaholt</name>
```
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED
And yet it is not only in the great line of Italian renaissance art, but even in the painterly <note place="bottom" type="gloss" resp="#MDMH"> Malerisch</note>. This word has, in the German, two distinct meanings, one objective, a quality residing in the object, the other subjective, a mode of apprehension and creation. To avoid confusion, they have been distinguished in English as <mentioned>picturesque</mentioned> and <mentioned>painterly</mentioned> respectively. <note>style of the Dutch genre painters of the seventeenth century that drapery has this psychological significance.</note>

For this example to be valid, the code MDMH must be defined elsewhere, for example by means of a responsibility statement in the associated TEI header.

Example The global n attribute may be used to supply the symbol or number used to mark the note’s point of attachment in the source text, as in the following example:

Mevorakh b. Saadya's mother, the matriarch of the family during the second half of the eleventh century, <note n="126" anchored="true"> The alleged mention of Judah Nagid's mother in a letter from 1071 is, in fact, a reference to Judah's children; cf. above, nn. 111 and 54. </note> is well known from Geniza documents published by Jacob Mann.

However, if notes are numbered in sequence and their numbering can be reconstructed automatically by processing software, it may well be considered unnecessary to record the note numbers.

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
  element note
  |
```

167
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

att.global.attributes,
att.placement.attributes,
att.pointing.attributes,
att.typed.attributes,
att.written.attributes,
att.anchoring.attributes,
macro.specialPara

<notesStmt> (notes statement) collects together any notes providing information about a text additional to that recorded in other parts of the bibliographic description. [2.2.6. The Notes Statement 2.2. The File Description]

Module header
Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

Contained by
header: fileDesc
May contain
core: note relatedItem

Note Information of different kinds should not be grouped together into the same note.
Example

<notesStmt>
  <note>Historical commentary provided by Mark Cohen</note>
  <note>OCR scanning done at University of Toronto</note>
</notesStmt>

Content model

<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>
    <elementRef key="relatedItem"/>
  </alternate>
</content>

Schema Declaration

```xml
element notesStmt { att.global.attributes, ( model.noteLike | relatedItem )+ } 
```

<num> (number) contains a number, written in any form. [3.6.3. Numbers and Measures]

Module core
Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

@type indicates the type of numeric value.
Derived from att.typed

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Suggested values include: cardinal absolute number, e.g. 21, 21.5

ordinal ordinal number, e.g. 21st

fraction fraction, e.g. one half or three-quarters

percentage a percentage

Note If a different typology is desired, other values can be used for this attribute.

@value supplies the value of the number in standard form.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.numeric

Values a numeric value.

Note The standard form used is defined by the TEI datatype teidata.numeric.

Member of model.measureLike

Contained by analysis:

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan

foreign gloss head hi item label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace

publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder

language licence principal sponsor

linking: seg

tagdocs: eg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain analysis:

interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr address address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi

index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled

term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

character data

Note Detailed analyses of quantities and units of measure in historical documents may also use the feature structure mechanism described in chapter 18. Feature Structures. The <num> element is intended for use in simple applications.

Example

<p>I reached <num type="cardinal" value="21">twenty-one</num> on my <num type="ordinal" value="21">twenty-first</num> birthday</p>

<p>Light travels at <num value="3E10">3×10<hi rend="sup">10</hi></num> cm per second.</p>
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element num
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  att.ranging.attributes,
  attribute type { "cardinal" | "ordinal" | "fraction" | "percentage" }?,
  attribute value { text }?,
  macro.phraseSeq
}
```

**<opener>** (opener) groups together dateline, byline, salutation, and similar phrases appearing as a preliminary group at the start of a division, especially of a letter.

[4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]

**Module** textstructure

**Attributes**

- `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.rendition` (`@rend`))
- `att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@next`, `@prev`) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`))
- `att.global.facets` (`@facets`) (`att.global.responsibility` (`@cert`, `@resp`)) (`att.global.source` (`@source`)) (`att.written` (`@hand`))

**Member of** model.divTopPart

**Contained by**

- core: `lg list`
- textstructure: `body div group postscript`

**May contain**

- analysis: `interp interpGrp pc s w`
- core: `abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num prig pp ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear`
- figures: `figure formula`
- header: `idno`
- linking: `anchor seg`
- tagdocs: `att code gi ident val`
- textstructure: `argument byline dateline epigraph salute signed`
- character data

**Example**

```
<opener>
  <dateline>Walden, this 29. of August 1592</dateline>
</opener>
```

**Example**

```
<opener>
  <dateline>
    <name type="place">Great Marlborough Street</name>
  </dateline>
</opener>
```
November 11, 1848

My dear Sir,

I am sorry to say that absence from town and other circumstances have prevented me from earlier enquiring...
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

linking: seg
tagdocs: eg
textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
core: abbr add address bibliographical choice cit corr date del desc emph foreign gap gloss graphic hi index ilab lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear
figures: figure formula table
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

character data

Example If all that is desired is to call attention to the original version in the copy text, <orig> may be used alone:

<l>But this will be a <orig>meere</orig> confusion</l>
<l>And hardly shall we all be <orig>vnderstoode</orig></l>

Example More usually, an <orig> will be combined with a regularized form within a <choice> element:

<l>But this will be a <choice>
<orig>meere</orig>
<reg>mere</reg>
</choice> confusion</l>
<l>And hardly shall we all be <choice>
<orig>vnderstoode</orig>
<reg>understood</reg>
</choice></l>

Content model

<content>
<macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element orig { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }

<p> (paragraph) marks paragraphs in prose. 3.1. Paragraphs 7.2.5. Speech Contents

Module core

Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend))
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls) att.fragmentable (@part) att.written (@hand)

Member of model.pLike

Contained by
<p>Hallgerd was outside. <q>There is blood on your axe,</q> she said.<q>What have you done?</q><p>
<p><q>I have now arranged that you can be married a second time,</q> replied Thjostolf.<p>
<p><q>Then you must mean that Thorvald is dead,</q> she said.<p>
<p><q>Yes,</q> said Thjostolf. <q>And now you must think up some plan for me.</q><p>

Schematron  <sch:report test="(ancestor::tei:ab or ancestor::tei:p) and not(ancestor::tei:floatingText |parent::tei:exemplum |parent::tei:item |parent::tei:note |parent::tei:q |parent::tei:quote |parent::tei:remarks |parent::tei:said |parent::tei:sp |parent::tei:stage |parent::tei:cell |parent::tei:figure )"> Abstract model violation: Paragraphs may not occur inside other paragraphs or ab elements. </sch:report>

Schematron <sch:report test="(ancestor::tei:l or ancestor::tei:lg) and not(ancestor::tei:floatingText |parent::tei:figure |parent::tei:note )"> Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain higher-level structural elements such as div, p, or ab, unless p is a child of figure or note, or is a descendant of floatingText. </sch:report>

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element p
{
  att.global.attributes,
}
<pb> (page beginning) marks the beginning of a new page in a paginated document.

[3.11.3. Milestone Elements]

Module core
Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend))
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
(att.typed (@type, @subtype)) att.edition (@ed, @edRef) att.spanning
(att.global.breaking (@break))

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by
analysis: sw

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor emph
expan foreign gloss head hi item label lg list listBibl mentioned name note num orig
p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled sp speaker stage term time title
unclear

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder language licence
principal sponsor

linking: seg

tagdocs: eg

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate
docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph front group impressim opener postscript
salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

May contain Empty element

Note A <pb> element should appear at the start of the page which it identifies. The
global n attribute indicates the number or other value associated with this page.
This will normally be the page number or signature printed on it, since the physical
sequence number is implicit in the presence of the <pb> element itself.
The type attribute may be used to characterize the page break in any respect. The
more specialized attributes break, ed, or edRef should be preferred when the intent is
to indicate whether or not the page break is word-breaking, or to note the source
from which it derives.

Example Page numbers may vary in different editions of a text.

Example A page break may be associated with a facsimile image of the page it introduces
by means of the facs attribute

<p> ... <pb n="145" ed="ed2"/> 
</p> <!-- Page 145 in edition "ed2" starts here --> ... <pb n="283" ed="ed1"/>
</p> <!-- Page 283 in edition "ed1" starts here --> ... </p>

Example A page break may be associated with a facsimile image of the page it introduces
by means of the facs attribute

<body>
<mouse>
<content>
<example>
<artist>
<text>
<struct>
<element>
<attribute>
<value>
</attribute>
</element>
</struct>
</text>
</example>
</artist>
</content>
</mouse>
the text it contains is encoded here -->
<p>
</p>
<pb n="2" facs="page2.png"/>
</p>
</body>

Content model <content> <empty/></content>

Schema Declaration

```xml
<element pb {
att.global.attributes,
att.typed.attributes,
att.edition.attributes,
att.spanning.attributes,
att.breaking.attributes,
att.global.attributes,
att.segLike,
att.fragmentable,
att.datcat,
att.datcat.normalized
att.force
att.unit
att.pre
}

Module analysis
Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend))
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
att.segLike (@function) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat, @targetDatcat))
att.fragmentable (@part) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.italic (@it)
att.underline (@ul)
att.normalized (@norm, @orig))

@force indicates the extent to which this punctuation mark conventionally
separates words or phrases
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.enumerated

Legal values are: strong the punctuation mark is a word separator
weak the punctuation mark is not a word separator
inter the punctuation mark may or may not be a word separator

@unit provides a name for the kind of unit delimited by this punctuation mark.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.enumerated

@pre indicates whether this punctuation mark precedes or follows the unit it
delimits.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.truthValue

Member of model.segLike

Contained by

175
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

analysis:  

core:  abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor emph expan
       foreign gloss head hi item label mentioned name note orig p pubPlace
       publisher q ref reg rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

figures:  cell

header:  change distributor edition extent licence

linking:  seg

tagdocs:  eg

textstructure:  byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
                imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

core:  abbr add choice corr del expand orig reg sic unclear

character data

Example

Example encoding of the German sentence Wir fahren in den Urlaub., encoded
with attributes from att.linguistic discussed in section AILALW.

```
<s>
  <w pos="PPER" msd="1.Pl.*.Nom">Wir</w>
  <w pos="VVFIN" msd="1.Pl.Pres.Ind">fahren</w>
  <w pos="APPR" msd="--">in</w>
  <w pos="ART" msd="Def.Masc.Akk.Sg.">den</w>
  <w pos="NN" msd="Masc.Akk.Sg.">Urlaub</w>
  <pc pos="." msd="--" join="left">.</pc>
</s>
```

Content model

```
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <TextNode/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <elementRef key="c"/>
    <classRef key="model.pPart.edit"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element pc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.segLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.linguistic.attributes,
  attribute force { "strong" | "weak" | "inter" }?,
  attribute unit { text }?,
  attribute pre { text }?,
```
contains a postscript, e.g. to a letter. 

Module textstructure

Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.written (@hand)

Member of model.divBottomPart

Contained by

core: lg list

figures: figure table
textstructure: back body div front group postscript

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp
core: bibl cit desc gap head index label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q sp stage

figures: figure table

linking: anchor
tagdocs: eg
textstructure: closer opener postscript signed trailer

Example

```xml
<div type="letter">
  <opener>
    <dateline>
      <placeName>Rimaone</placeName>
      <date when="2006-11-21">21 Nov 06</date>
    </dateline>
    <salute>Dear Susan,</salute>
  </opener>
  <p>Thank you very much for the assistance splitting those logs. I'm sorry about the misunderstanding as to the size of the task. I really was not asking for help, only to borrow the axe. Hope you had fun in any case.</p>
  <closer>
    <salute>Sincerely yours,</salute>
    <signed>Seymour</signed>
  </closer>
  <postscript>
    <label>P.S.</label>
    <p>The collision occurred on <date when="2001-07-06">06 Jul 01</date>.</p>
  </postscript>
</div>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <sequence>
    <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
```
A list of elements described

<alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
<classRef key="model.global"/>
<classRef key="model.divTopPart"/>
</alternate>

<alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
<classRef key="model.global"/>
<classRef key="model.divBottomPart"/>
</alternate>

<sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
<classRef key="model.divBottomPart"/>
<classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</sequence>

</sequence>
</content>

Schema Declaration

```xml
<principal>(principal researcher) supplies the name of the principal researcher responsible for the creation of an electronic text. [2.2.1. The Title Statement]
```

Module header

Attributes `att.global.attributes`, `att.written.attributes`,
```xml
( ( model.global | model.divTopPart )*,
  model.common,
  ( model.global | model.common )*,
  ( model.divBottomPart, model.global* )* )
```

Member of `model.respLike`

Contained by
```xml
core: bibl
header: editionStmt titleStmt
```

May contain
```xml
analysis: interp interpGrp
```
```xml
core: abbr address choice date emph expand foreign gap gloss hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr q ref rs soCalled term time title
```
```xml
figures: figure
header: idno
linking: anchor
tagdocs: att code gi ident val
```
profileDesc

Character data

Example

<principal ref="http://viaf.org/viaf/105517912">Gary Taylor</principal>

Content model

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element principal
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  att.datable.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}

<profileDesc>
(text-profile description) provides a detailed description of non-bibliographic aspects of a text, specifically the languages and sublanguages used, the situation in which it was produced, the participants and their setting. 2.4. The Profile Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components

Module header

Attributes
att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend))
  (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
  (att.global.fac ( @fac)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source ( @source))

Member of model.teiHeaderPart

Contained by
header: teiHeader

May contain
header: creation langUsage textClass

Note Although the content model permits it, it is rarely meaningful to supply multiple occurrences for any of the child elements of <profileDesc> unless these are documenting multiple texts.

Example

<profileDesc>
 <langUsage>
  <language ident="fr">French</language>
 </langUsage>
 <textDesc n="novel">
  <channel mode="w">print; part issues</channel>
  <constitution type="single"/>
  <derivation type="original"/>
  <domain type="art"/>
  <factuality type="fiction"/>
  <interaction type="none"/>
  <preparedness type="prepared"/>
  <purpose type="entertain" degree="high"/>
</textDesc>

179
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Content model

```
<content>
  <classRef key="model.profileDescPart" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element profileDesc { att.global.attributes, model.profileDescPart* }
```

**<projectDesc>** (project description) describes in detail the aim or purpose for which an electronic file was encoded, together with any other relevant information concerning the process by which it was assembled or collected. 

Module header

Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default)

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by header: encodingDesc

May contain core: p

Example

```
<projectDesc>
  <p>Texts collected for use in the Claremont Shakespeare Clinic, June 1990</p>
</projectDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element projectDesc { }
```
(pointer) defines a pointer to another location.

Module core

Attributes att.cReferencing (@cRef) att.declaring (@decls) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.pointing (att.targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.ptrLike

Contained by

analysis:

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope cit corr date desc del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg relatedItem resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal publicationStmt sponsor

linking: seg

tagdocs: eg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain Empty element

Example

```xml
<ptr target="#p143 #p144"/>
<ptr target="http://www.tei-c.org"/>
<ptr cRef="1.3.4"/>
```

Schematron <sch:report test="@target and @cRef">Only one of the attributes @target and @cRef may be supplied on <sch:name/>.</sch:report>

Content model `<content> <empty/></content>`

Schema Declaration

```xml
element ptr
{
    att.cReferencing.attributes,
    att.declaring.attributes,
    att.global.attributes,
    att.pointing.attributes,
    att.typed.attributes,
    empty
}
```
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

<pubPlace> (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published. [3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]

Module core
Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))

Member of model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart.detail

Contained by
core: bib
header: publicationStmt
textstructure: docImprint

May contain
analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expand foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure formula
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code gi ident val

character data

Example

<publicationStmt>
  <publisher>Oxford University Press</publisher>
  <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace>
  <date>1989</date>
</publicationStmt>

Content model

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element pubPlace
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq
}

<publicationStmt> (publication statement) groups information concerning the publication or distribution of an electronic or other text. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]

Module header
Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
Note Where a publication statement contains several members of the model.publicationStmtPart.agency or model.publicationStmtPart.detail classes rather than one or more paragraphs or anonymous blocks, care should be taken to ensure that the repeated elements are presented in a meaningful order. It is a conformance requirement that elements supplying information about publication place, address, identifier, availability, and date be given following the name of the publisher, distributor, or authority concerned, and preferably in that order.

Example

<publicationStmt>
  <publisher>C. Muquardt </publisher>
  <pubPlace>Bruxelles & Leipzig</pubPlace>
  <date when="1846"/>
</publicationStmt>

Example

<publicationStmt>
  <publisher>Chadwyck Healey</publisher>
  <pubPlace>Cambridge</pubPlace>
  <availability>
    <p>Available under licence only</p>
  </availability>
  <date when="1992">1992</date>
</publicationStmt>

Example

<publicationStmt>
  <publisher>Zea Books</publisher>
  <pubPlace>Lincoln, NE</pubPlace>
  <date>2017</date>
  <availability>
    <p>This is an open access work licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International license.</p>
  </availability>
  <ptr target="http://digitalcommons.unl.edu/zeabook/55"/>
</publicationStmt>

Content model

<content>
  <alternate>
    <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.publicationStmtPart.agency"/>
      <classRef key="model.publicationStmtPart.detail" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
  </alternate>
</content>
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Schema Declaration

```xml
<publisher> (publisher) provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item. [3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.

Module core

Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)

Member of model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart.agency

Contained by

core: bibl

header: publicationStmt

textstructure: docImprint

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pe s w

core: abbr add address choice cite corr date del emph expand foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num prg pb pt q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

character data

Note Use the full form of the name by which a company is usually referred to, rather than any abbreviation of it which may appear on a title page

Example

```xml
<imprint>
  <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace>
  <publisher>Clarendon Press</publisher>
  <date>1987</date>
</imprint>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```
<q>

(q) contains material which is distinguished from the surrounding text using quotation marks or a similar method, for any one of a variety of reasons including, but not limited to: direct speech or thought, technical terms or jargon, authorial distance, quotations from elsewhere, and passages that are mentioned but not used.

3.3.3. Quotation

Module core

Attributes

att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.ascribed.directed (@toWhom) att.ascribed (@who)

@type (type) may be used to indicate whether the offset passage is spoken or thought, or to characterize it more finely.

Status Optional

Datatype tedata.enumerated

Suggested values include:

spoken (spoken) representation of speech

thought (thought) representation of thought, e.g. internal monologue

written (written) quotation from a written source

soCalled (so called) authorial distance

foreign (foreign)

distinct (distinct) linguistically distinct

term technical term

emph (emph) rhetorically emphasized

mentioned (mentioned) refering to itself, not its normal referent

Member of model.common model.hiLike

Contained by

analysis: s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope cit corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref resp rs sic soCalled sp speaker stage term time title unclear

figures: cell figDesc figure formula

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor

linking: seg

tagdocs: eg

textstructure: argument body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint epigraph imprimatur opener postscript salute signed titlePart trailer
May contain

**analysis**: interp interpGrp pc s w

**core**: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss

graphic hi index ilab lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

**figures**: figure formula table

**header**: idno

**linking**: anchor seg

**tagdocs**: att code eg gi ident val

character data

Note  May be used to indicate that a passage is distinguished from the surrounding text for reasons concerning which no claim is made. When used in this manner, `<q>` may be thought of as syntactic sugar for `<hi>` with a value of `rend` that indicates the use of such mechanisms as quotation marks.

Example

It is spelled `<q>Tübingen</q>` — to enter the letter `<q>ü</q>` with an umlaut hold down the `<q>option</q>` key and press `<q>0 0 f c</q>`

**Content model**

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```
<element q
  {
    att.global.attributes,
    att.ascribed.directed.attributes,
    attribute type
    {
      "spoken"
      | "thought"
      | "written"
      | "soCalled"
      | "foreign"
      | "distinct"
      | "term"
      | "emph"
      | "mentioned"
    },
    macro.specialPara
  },
  cReferencing ( @cRef)
  decls ( @decls)
  global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
  (global, rendition ( @rend))
  (global, linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev))
  (global, analytic ( @ana))
  (global, facets ( @facets))
```

`<ref>` (reference) defines a reference to another location, possibly modified by additional text or comment.  3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References 16.1. Links

**Module core**

**Attributes**

```
cReferencing ( @cRef)
  decls ( @decls)
  global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
  (global, rendition ( @rend))
  (global, linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev))
  (global, analytic ( @ana))
  (global, facets ( @facets))
```
Note  The target and cRef attributes are mutually exclusive.

Example

See especially
<ref target="http://www.natcorp.ox.ac.uk/Texts/A02.xml#s2">the second sentence</ref>

Example

See also <ref target="#locution">s.v. <term>locution</term></ref>

Schematron  <sch:report test=”@target and @cRef”>Only one of the attributes @target’
and @cRef’ may be supplied on <sch:name/>  </sch:report>

Content model

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element ref
{
  att.cReferencing.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

\{att.global.attributes, att.pointing.attributes, att.typed.attributes, macro.paramContent\}

<refsDecl> (references declaration) specifies how canonical references are constructed for this text. MILESTONE METHOD 2.3. THE ENCODING DESCRIPTION 2.3.6. THE REFERENCE SYSTEM DECLARATION

Module header
Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend))
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default)

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by header: encodingDesc

May contain core: p

Example

<refsDecl>
  replacementPattern="xpath://body/div[@n='$1']/div[$2]/div3[$3]"/>
</refsDecl>

This example is a formal representation for the referencing scheme described informally in the following example.

Example

<refsDecl>
  <p>References are made up by concatenating the value for the <att> attribute on the highest level <div> element, followed by a space, followed by the sequential number of the next level <div> followed by a colon followed by the sequential number of the next (and lowest) level <div>.</p>
</refsDecl>

Content model

<content>
  <alternate>
    <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <elementRef key="citeStructure" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <elementRef key="cRefPattern" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <elementRef key="refState" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </alternate>
</content>

Schema Declaration

188
<reg> (regularization) contains a reading which has been regularized or normalized in some sense. 3.5.2. Regularization and Normalization [12. Critical Apparatus]

Module core
Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space ) ( att.global.rendition ( @rend ) ( att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev ) ) ( att.global.analytic ( @ana ) ( att.global.facs ( @facs ) ) ( att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ) ) ( att.global.source ( @source ) ) att.editLike ( @evidence, @instant ) att.typed ( @type, @subtype )

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by analysis: pcs w
core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label lb lg mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear
figures: cell
header: change distributor edition extent licence
linking: seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain analysis: interp interpGrp pcs w
core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig ph ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear
figures: figure formula table
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val
character data

Example If all that is desired is to call attention to the fact that the copy text has been regularized, <reg> may be used alone:

Example It is also possible to identify the individual responsible for the regularization, and, using the <choice> and <orig> elements, to provide both the original and regularized readings:

Example Please <reg>knock</reg> if an <reg>answer</reg> is <reg>required</reg>.

Example Please <choice>
<reg resp="#LB">knock</reg>
</choice>
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

<orig>cnk</orig>
</choice> if an <choice>
<reg>answer</reg>
<orig>nsr</orig>
</choice> is <choice>
<reg>required</reg>
<orig>reqd</orig>
</choice>
</q>

Content model

<content>
<macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element reg
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

<relatedItem> contains or references some other bibliographic item which is related to the present one in some specified manner, for example as a constituent or alternative version of it. [3.12.2.7. Related Items]

Module core

Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

@target points to the related bibliographic element by means of an absolute or relative URI reference
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.pointer

Member of model.biblPart

Contained by
core: bibl
header: notesStmt

May contain
core: bibl listBibl ptr ref

Note If the target attribute is used to reference the related bibliographic item, the element must be empty.

Example

<biblStruct>
  <monogr>
    <author>Shirley, James</author>
  </monogr>
</biblStruct>
The gentlemen of Venice

Shirley, James

The gentlemen of Venice

Salisbury Court by Her Majesties servants

Schematron

If the @target attribute on <sch:name/> is used, the relatedItem element must be empty. A relatedItem element should have either a 'target' attribute or a child element to indicate the related bibliographic item.

Content model

Schema Declaration

element relatedItem
{
    att.global.attributes,
    att.typed.attributes,
    attribute target { text }?,
    ( model.biblLike | model.ptrLike )?
}

(responsibility) contains a phrase describing the nature of a person’s intellectual responsibility, or an organization’s role in the production or distribution of a work.
3.12.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors

2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2.2. The Edition Statement 2.2.5. The Series Statement

Module core

Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend))
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref)
(att.datable (@period) (att.datable.w3c (@when)))

Contained by core: respStmt

May contain analysis: interp interpGrp

core: abbr address choice date emph expand foreign gap gloss hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr q ref rs soCalled term time title

figures: figure

header: idno

linking: anchor

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

character data

Note The attribute ref, inherited from the class att.canonical may be used to indicate the kind of responsibility in a normalized form by referring directly to a standardized list of responsibility types, such as that maintained by a naming authority, for example the list maintained at http://www.loc.gov/marc/relators/relacode.html for bibliographic usage.

Example

```
<respStmt>
  <resp ref="http://id.loc.gov/vocabulary/relators/com.html">compiler</resp>
  <name>Edward Child</name>
</respStmt>
```

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element resp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  att.datable.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}
```

<respStmt> (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply. May also be used to
Module core
Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facets (@facets)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref)

Member of model.respLike

Contained by
core: bibl
header: editionStmt seriesStmt titleStmt

May contain
core: name note resp

Example

```xml
<respStmt>
  <resp>transcribed from original ms</resp>
  <persName>Claus Huitfeldt</persName>
</respStmt>
```

Example

```xml
<respStmt>
  <resp>converted to XML encoding</resp>
  <name>Alan Morrison</name>
</respStmt>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <sequence>
    <alternate>
      <sequence>
        <elementRef key="resp" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <classRef key="model.nameLike.agent" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </sequence>
    </alternate>
    <sequence>
      <classRef key="model.nameLike.agent" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      <elementRef key="resp" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
    <sequence>
      <classRef key="model.nameLike.agent" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      <elementRef key="note" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element respStmt
{
  att.global.attributes,
}
<revisionDesc> (revision description) summarizes the revision history for a file. 2.6.

The Revision Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components

Module header

Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend))
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.docStatus (@status)

Contained by header: teiHeader

May contain core: list

header: change

Note If present on this element, the status attribute should indicate the current status of the document. The same attribute may appear on any <change> to record the status at the time of that change. Conventionally <change> elements should be given in reverse date order, with the most recent change at the start of the list.

Example

<revisionDesc status="embargoed">
  <change when="1991-11-11" who="#LB"> deleted chapter 10 </change>
</revisionDesc>

Content model

<content>
  <alternate>
    <elementRef key="list"/>
    <elementRef key="listChange"/>
    <elementRef key="change" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </alternate>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element revisionDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.docStatus.attributes,
  ( list | listChange | change+ )
}

<row> (row) contains one row of a table. 14.1.1. TEI Tables
Module figures
Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.tableDecoration (@role, @rows, @cols)

Contained by figures: table
May contain figures: cell
Example

```xml
<row role="data">
  <cell role="label">Classics</cell>
  <cell>Idle listless and unimproving</cell>
</row>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <elementRef key="cell" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element row { att.global.attributes, att.tableDecoration.attributes, cell+ }
```

(rs) (referencing string) contains a general purpose name or referring string. [13.2.1. Personal Names 3.6.1. Referring Strings]

Module core
Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.nameLike

Contained by analysis:

```
<core>
  analysis: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expand foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear
```

figures: cell figDesc
header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor

linking: seg

tagdocs: eg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

analysis:
  interp interpGrp pc s w

core:
  abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del editor emph expand foreign
gloss head hi item label mentioned name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled
term time title unclear

figures:
  figure formula

header:
  idno

linking:
  anchor seg

tagdocs:
  att code gi ident val
character data

Example

<My dear <rs type="person">Mr. Bennet</rs>, </q> said <rs type="person">his lady</rs>
to him one day, <q>have you heard that <rs type="place">Netherfield Park</rs> is let at last?</q>

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element rs
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq
}
```

<s> (s-unit) contains a sentence-like division of a text. [17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories 8.4.1. Segmentation]

Module analysis

Attributes  att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend))
    (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
    (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source
        (@source))) att.segLike (@function) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat,
        @targetDatcat)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.notated
        (@notation)

Member of  model.segLike

Contained by

analysis:  s

core:
  abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del editor emph expand foreign
gloss head hi item label mentioned name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled
speaker stage term time title unclear

figures:
  cell

header:
  change distributor edition extent licence

linking:  seg

196
**<salute>**

(salutation) contains a salutation or greeting prefixed to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text, or the salutation in the closing of a letter, preface, etc. [4.2.2. Openers and Closers]

**Module textstructure**

**Attributes**

`att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)`

`att.global rendition (@rend)`

`att.global linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)`

`att.global analytic (@ana)`

---

**Note**

The `<s>` element may be used to mark orthographic sentences, or any other segmentation of a text, provided that the segmentation is end-to-end, complete, and non-nesting. For segmentation which is partial or recursive, the `<seg>` should be used instead.

The `type` attribute may be used to indicate the type of segmentation intended, according to any convenient typology.

**Example**

```xml
<s>When are you leaving?</s>
<s>Tomorrow.</s>
```

**Schematron** `<sch:report test=”tei:s”>` You may not nest one `s` element within another: use `seg` instead`</sch:report>`

**Content model**

```xml
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

(att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.written (@hand)

Member of model.divWrapper

Contained by
core: lg list
figures: figure table
textstructure: body closer div front group opener

May contain
analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear
figures: figure formula table
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

character data

Example

<salute>To all courteous mindes, that will voutchsafe the readinge.</salute>

Content model

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element salute
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.written.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

<samplingDecl> (sampling declaration) contains a prose description of the rationale and methods used in sampling texts in the creation of a corpus or collection. 2.3.2. The Sampling Declaration 2.3. The Encoding Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements

Module header
Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend))
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default)

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by
header: encodingDesc

May contain

198
This element records all information about systematic inclusion or omission of portions of the text, whether a reflection of sampling procedures in the pure sense or of systematic omission of material deemed either too difficult to transcribe or not of sufficient interest.

Example

```xml
<samplingDecl>
  <p>Samples of up to 2000 words taken at random from the beginning, middle, or end of each text identified as relevant by respondents.</p>
</samplingDecl>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
<seg>(arbitrary segment) represents any segmentation of text below the chunk level.
Speech Contents]
```

```
Module linking

Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend))
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source
(@source)) (att.segLike (@function)) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat, @targetDatcat))
(att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.written (@hand) att.notated (@notation)
```

```
Member of model.choicePart model.segLike
```

```
Contained by
```

```
analysis: a w
```

```
core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor emph expand
foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear
```

```
figures: cell
```

```
header: change distributor edition extent licence
```

```
linking: seg
```

```
tagdocs: eg
```

```
textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer
```

199
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

May contain
analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expam foreign gap gloss
graphic hi index l label lb li list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb
del del rb ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear
figures: figure formula table
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val
character data

Note The <seg> element may be used at the encoder’s discretion to mark any segments of
the text of interest for processing. One use of the element is to mark text features
for which no appropriate markup is otherwise defined. Another use is to provide an
identifier for some segment which is to be pointed at by some other element—i.e. to
provide a target, or a part of a target, for a <ptr> or other similar element.

Example

<seg>When are you leaving?</seg>
<seg>Tomorrow.</seg>

Example

<s>
  <seg rend="caps" type="initial-cap">So father’s only</seg> glory was the
  ballfield.
</s>

Example

<seg type="preamble">
  <seg>Sigmund, <seg type="patronym">the son of Volsung</seg>, was a king
  in Frankish country.</seg>
  <seg>Sinfjotli was the eldest of his sons ...</seg>
  <seg>Borghild, Sigmund’s wife, had a brother ...</seg>
</seg>

Content model

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element seg
{  
  att.global.attributes,  
  att.segLike.attributes,  
  att.typed.attributes,  
  att.written.attributes,  
  att.notated.attributes,  
  macro.paraContent}
<seriesStmt> (series statement) groups information about the series, if any, to which a publication belongs. [2.2.5. The Series Statement 2.2. The File Description]

Module header
Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) att.global.analytic (@ana)
(att.global.facs (@facs)) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source)
(att.declarable @default)

Contained by header: fileDesc
May contain core: biblScope editor p respStmt title
header: idno

Example

<seriesStmt>
<title>Machine-Readable Texts for the Study of Indian Literature</title>
<respStmt>
<resp>ed. by</resp>
<name>Jan Gonda</name>
</respStmt>
<biblScope unit="volume">1.2</biblScope>
<idno type="ISSN">0 345 6789</idno>
</seriesStmt>

Content model

<content>
<alternate>
<classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
<sequence>
<elementRef key="title" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
<alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
<elementRef key="editor"/>
<elementRef key="respStmt"/>
</alternate>
<alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
<elementRef key="idno"/>
<elementRef key="biblScope"/>
</alternate>
</sequence>
</alternate>
</content>

Schema Declaration

 element seriesStmt  
{  
 att.global.attributes,  
 att.declarable.attributes,  
 ( model.pLike+ | ( title+, ( editor | respStmt )* , ( idno | biblScope )* ) )  
}
\(<\text{sic}>\) (Latin for thus or so) contains text reproduced although apparently incorrect or inaccurate. [3.5.1. Apparent Errors]

Module core
Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) att.global.analytic (@ana)
(att.global.facs (@facs)) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source)

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional Contained by
analysis: pc s w
core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor emph expan
foreign gloss head hi item l label lg mentioned name note num orig pb pubPlace
q ref reg rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear
figures: cell
textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain
analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss
graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb
ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear
figures: figure formula table
head: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

Example

for his nose was as sharp as a pen, and \(<\text{sic}>\) a Table</\text{sic}> of green fields.

Example If all that is desired is to call attention to the apparent problem in the copy text, \(<\text{sic}>\) may be used alone:

I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now – how \(<\text{sic}>\text{we can}</\text{sic}>\) prove or disprove anyone's theories?

Example It is also possible, using the \(<\text{choice}>\) and \(<\text{corr}>\) elements, to provide a corrected reading:

I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now – how \(<\text{choice}>\text{we can}</\text{sic}>\text{we can}</\text{sic}><\text{corr}>can we</\text{corr}>\) prove or disprove anyone's theories?

Example
for his nose was as sharp as a pen, and <choice>
<sic>a Table</sic>
<corr>a babble</corr>
</choice> of green fields.

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element sic { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

<signed> (signature) contains the closing salutation, etc., appended to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text. 4.2.2. Openers and Closers

Module textstructure

Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend) att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source) att.written (@hand)

Member of model.divBottomPart model.divTopPart

Contained by

- core: lg list
- figures: figure table
- textstructure: back body closer div front group opener postscript

May contain

- analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
- core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expand foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb ll lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig ph ptr ref reg rs sig soCalled stage term time title unclear
- figures: figure formula table
- header: idno
- linking: anchor seg
- tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val
- character data

Example

```xml
<signed>Thine to command <name>Humph. Moseley</name>
</signed>
```

Example

```xml
<closer>
  <signed>Sign'd and Seal'd,
  </list>
  <item>John Bull</item>
```
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element signed
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.written.attributes,
  macro.paraContent
}
```

<soCalled> (so called) contains a word or phrase for which the author or narrator indicates a disclaiming of responsibility, for example by the use of scare quotes or italics. [3.3.3. Quotation]

Module core

Attributes
att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) att.global.analytic (@ana)
(att.global.facs (@facs)) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source)

Member of model.emphLike

Contained by

analysis: seg

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan
foreign gloss head hi item lb label mentioned name note num orig pb pubPlace published q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder
language licence principal sponsor

linking: seg

tagdocs: eg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp p pc s w

core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi
index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled
term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

header: idno

linking: anchor seg
To edge his way along
the crowded paths of life, warning all human sympathy to keep its distance,
was what the
knowing ones call <soCalled>nuts</soCalled> to Scrooge.

Content model

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration

 element soCalled { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }

Example

<sourceDesc>
  <bibl>
    <title level="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</title>. In
    <author>Victor E Neuberg</author>, <title>The Penny Histories</title>. 
    <publisher>OUP</publisher>
    <date>1968</date>. </bibl>
</sourceDesc>

Example

<sourceDesc>
  <p>Born digital: no previous source exists.</p>
</sourceDesc>

Content model

<content>
  <alternate>
  </alternate>
</content>
<classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
<alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.sourceDescPart"/>
  <classRef key="model.listLike"/>
</alternate>
</alternate>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element sourceDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  {
    model.pLike+
    | ( model.biblLike | model.sourceDescPart | model.listLike )+
  }
}

<sp> (speech) contains an individual speech in a performance text, or a passage presented as such in a prose or verse text. [3.13.2. Core Tags for Drama 3.13. Passages of Verse or Drama 7.2.2. Speeches and Speakers]

Module core
Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global/linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global/facs (@facs)) (att.global/responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global/source (@source)) att.ascribed/directed (@toWhom) att.ascribed (@who)

Member of model.divPart
Contained by
core: item note q stage
figures: cell figure
header: change licence
textstructure: argument body div epigraph postscript
May contain
analysis: interp interpGrp
core: cit gap index l b l g list milestone note p pb q speaker stage
figures: figure table
linking: anchor

Note The who attribute on this element may be used either in addition to the <speaker> element or as an alternative.

Example

<sp>
  <speaker>The reverend Doctor Opimian</speaker>
  <p>I do not think I have named a single unpresentable fish.</p>
</sp>
<sp>
Mr Gryll, Doctor: there is not much to be said for bream.

On the contrary, sir, I think there is much to be said for him. In the first place [...].

Fish, Miss Gryll — I could discourse to you on fish by the hour: but for the present I will forbear [...].
<speaker> contains a specialized form of heading or label, giving the name of one or more speakers in a dramatic text or fragment. [3.13.2. Core Tags for Drama]

Module core

Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition ( @rend))
( att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic ( @ana))
( att.global.facs ( @facs)) ( att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp)) ( att.global.source ( @source))

Contained by

core: sp

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi
index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled
term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

character data

Example

<sp who="#ni #rsa">
  <speaker>Nancy and Robert</speaker>
  <stage type="delivery">(speaking simultaneously)</stage>
  <p>The future? ...</p>
</sp>

<List type="speakers">
  <item xml:id="ni"/>
  <item xml:id="rsa"/>
</List>

Content model

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element speaker { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
Contained by
  core: bibl
  header: editionStmt titleStmt
May contain
  analysis: interp interpGrp
  core: abbr address choice date emph expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb mentioned
milestone name note num pb ptr q ref rs soCalled term time title
  figures: figure
  header: idno
  linking: anchor
tagdocs: att code gi ident val

character data

Note Sponsors give their intellectual authority to a project; they are to be distinguished from funders (see element <funder>), who provide the funding but do not necessarily take intellectual responsibility.

Example

  <sponsor>Association for Computers and the Humanities</sponsor>
  <sponsor>Association for Computational Linguistics</sponsor>
  <sponsor ref="http://www.allc.org/">Association for Literary and Linguistic Computing</sponsor>

Content model

  <content>
    <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/>
  </content>

Schema Declaration

  element sponsor
  {
    att.global.attributes,
    att.canonical.attributes,
    att.datable.attributes,
    macro.phraseSeq.limited
  }

<stage> (stage direction) contains any kind of stage direction within a dramatic text or fragment. [3.13.2. Core Tags for Drama 3.13. Passages of Verse or Drama 7.2.4. Stage Directions]

Module core

  Attributes att.ascribed.directed (@toWhom) att.ascribed (@who) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) att.global.facs (@facs) [att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)] att.global.source (@source) att.placement (@place) att.written (@hand)
  @type indicates the kind of stage direction.

  Status Recommended

  Datatype 0–∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace
Suggested values include: **setting** describes a setting.

- **entrance** describes an entrance.
- **exit** describes an exit.
- **business** describes stage business.
- **novelistic** is a narrative, motivating stage direction.
- **delivery** describes how a character speaks.
- **modifier** gives some detail about a character.
- **location** describes a location.

**mixed** more than one of the above

*Note* If the value mixed is used, it must be the only value. Multiple values may however be supplied if a single stage direction performs multiple functions, for example is both an entrance and a modifier.

**Member of** `model.stageLike`

**Contained by**
- core: `add`  `corr`  `del`  `desc`  `emph`  `head`  `hi`  `item`  `lg`  `note`  `orig`  `p`  `q`  `ref`  `reg`  `sic`  `sp`  `stage`  `title`
  `unclear`
- figures: `cell`  `figDesc`  `figure`
- header: `change`  `licence`
- linking: `seg`

**textstructure**: `argument`  `body`  `div`  `docEdition`  `epigraph`  `imprimatur`  `postscript`  `salute`  `signed`  `titlePart`  `trailer`

**May contain**
- analysis: `interp`  `interpGrp`  `pc`  `s`  `w`
- core: `abbr`  `add`  `address`  `bibl`  `choice`  `cit`  `corr`  `date`  `del`  `desc`  `emph`  `expan`  `foreign`  `gap`  `gloss`
  `graphic`  `hi`  `index`  `l`  `label`  `lb`  `lg`  `list`  `listBibl`  `mentioned`  `milestone`  `name`  `note`  `num`  `orig`  `p`
  `pb`  `ptr`  `q`  `ref`  `reg`  `rs`  `sic`  `soCalled`  `sp`  `stage`  `term`  `time`  `title`  `unclear`
- figures: `figure`  `formula`  `table`
- header: `idno`
- linking: `anchor`  `seg`
- tagdocs: `att`  `code`  `eg`  `gi`  `ident`  `val`

**Character data**

*Note* The **who** attribute may be used to indicate more precisely the person or persons participating in the action described by the stage direction.

**Example**

```xml
<stage type="setting">A curtain being drawn.</stage>
<stage type="setting">Music</stage>
<stage type="entrance">Enter Husband as being thrown off his horse and falls.</stage>
<!-- Middleton : Yorkshire Tragedy -->
<stage type="exit">Exit pursued by a bear.</stage>
<stage type="business">He quickly takes the stone out.</stage>
<stage type="delivery">To Lussurioso.</stage>
<stage type="novelistic">Having had enough, and embarrassed for the family.</stage>
<!-- Lorraine Hansbury : a raisin in the sun -->
<stage type="modifier">Disguised as Ansaldo.</stage>
<stage type="entrance modifier">Enter Latrocinio disguised as an empiric.</stage>
<!-- Middleton: The Widow -->
```
Example

 Behold. <stage n="*" place="margin">Here the vp</stage>/per part of the
 <hi>Scene</hi> open'd; when
 straight appear'd a Heauen, and all the <hi>Pure Artes</hi> sitting on
two semi<hi>c</hi>b<hi>ches, one a<hi>b</hi>oue another: who sate
thus till the rest of the
 <hi>Prologue</hi> was spoken, which being ended, they descended in
order within the <hi>Scene</hi>, whiles the Musicke plaid
 <stage type="location">Our Poet knowing our free hearts</stage>

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element stage
{
  att.ascribed.directed.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  att.written.attributes,
  attribute type
  {
    list
    {
      "setting"
      "entrance"
      "exit"
      "business"
      "novelistic"
      "delivery"
      "modifier"
      "location"
      "mixed"
    }
    ,
  }
  macro.specialPara
}
```

<table>
<table> (table) contains text displayed in tabular form, in rows and columns. [14.1.1. TEI Tables]

Module figures
Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space ) att.global.rendition ( @rend )
     ( att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev ) ) att.global.analytic ( @ana )
     ( att.global.facs ( @facs ) ) att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ) att.global.source
     ( @source ) ) att.typed ( @type, @subtype )
@rows (rows) indicates the number of rows in the table.
Status Optional

211
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Datatype `teidata.count`

Note If no number is supplied, an application must calculate the number of rows.

Rows should be presented from top to bottom.

@cols (columns) indicates the number of columns in each row of the table.

Status Optional

Datatype `teidata.count`

Note If no number is supplied, an application must calculate the number of columns.

Within each row, columns should be presented left to right.

Member of `model.listLike`

Contained by

core: add cor del desc emph head hi item l note orig p q ref reg sic sp stage title unclear
figures: cell figDesc figure
header: change licence sourceDesc
linking: seg

textstructure: argument back body div docEdition epigraph imprint postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

core: gap graphic head index lb milestone note pb
figures: figure formula row
linking: anchor

textstructure: argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph postscript salute signed trailer

Note Contains an optional heading and a series of rows.

Any rendition information should be supplied using the global `rend` attribute, at the table, row, or cell level as appropriate.

Example

```xml
<table rows="4" cols="4">
  <head>Poor Men's Lodgings in Norfolk (Mayhew, 1843)</head>
  <row role="label">
    <cell role="data">Poor Men's Lodgings in Norfolk (Mayhew, 1843)</cell>
  </row>
  <row role="label">
    <cell role="data">Dossing Cribs or Lodging Houses</cell>
    <cell role="data">Beds</cell>
    <cell role="data">Needys or Nightly Lodgers</cell>
  </row>
  <row role="data">
    <cell role="data">Bury St Edmund's</cell>
    <cell role="data">5</cell>
    <cell role="data">8</cell>
    <cell role="data">128</cell>
  </row>
  <row role="data">
    <cell role="data">Thetford</cell>
    <cell role="data">3</cell>
    <cell role="data">6</cell>
    <cell role="data">36</cell>
  </row>
  <row role="data">
    <cell role="data">Attleboro'</cell>
  </row>
</table>
```
Content model

```xml
<content>
  <sequence>
    <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.headLike"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
    </alternate>
    <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <elementRef key="row"/>
      <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
    <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
      <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
    <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
      <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element table
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute rows { text }?,
  attribute cols { text }?,
  ( ( model.headLike | model.global )*,
    ( ( row, model.global* )+ | ( model.graphicLike, model.global* )+ ),
    ( model.divBottom, model.global* )*)
}
```
<taxonomy> (taxonomy) defines a typology either implicitly, by means of a bibliographic citation, or explicitly by a structured taxonomy. [2.3.7. The Classification Declaration]

Module header
Attributes [att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)] (att.global.rendition (@rend)) [att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)] (att.global.analytic (@ana)) [att.global.facs (@facs)] (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

Contained by header: classDecl taxonomy

May contain core: bibl desc gloss listBibl

header: category taxonomy

Note Nested taxonomies are common in many fields, so the <taxonomy> element can be nested.

Example

```xml
<taxonomy xml:id="tax.b">
  <bibl>Brown Corpus</bibl>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.a">
    <catDesc>Press Reportage</catDesc>
    <category xml:id="tax.b.a1">
      <catDesc>Daily</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="tax.b.a2">
      <catDesc>Sunday</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="tax.b.a3">
      <catDesc>National</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="tax.b.a4">
      <catDesc>Provincial</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="tax.b.a5">
      <catDesc>Political</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="tax.b.a6">
      <catDesc>Sports</catDesc>
    </category>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.d">
    <catDesc>Religion</catDesc>
    <category xml:id="tax.b.d1">
      <catDesc>Books</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="tax.b.d2">
      <catDesc>Periodicals and tracts</catDesc>
    </category>
  </category>
</taxonomy>
```

Example

```xml
<taxonomy xml:id="literature">
  <category xml:id="poetry">
    <catDesc>Poetry</catDesc>
  </category>
</taxonomy>
```
Shall I compare thee to a summer's day

Content model

```xml
<content>
<alternate>
<alternate minOccurs="1">
<alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
<elementRef key="category"/>
</alternate>
</alternate>
</alternate>
</content>
```
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

<elementRef key="gloss" minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="1"/>
</alternate>
<alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <elementRef key="category"/>
    <elementRef key="taxonomy"/>
</alternate>
</sequence>
</alternate>
</sequence>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element taxonomy
{
    att.global.attributes,
    {
        ( category | taxonomy )+
        | (( model.descLike | equiv | gloss )+, ( category | taxonomy )* )
    }
    | ( model.biblLike, ( category | taxonomy )* )
}

<teiCorpus> (TEI corpus) contains the whole of a TEI encoded corpus, comprising a single corpus header and one or more <TEI> elements, each containing a single text header and a text. [4. Default Text Structure 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text]

Module core
Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

@version (version) specifies the version number of the TEI Guidelines against which this document is valid.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.version

Note Major editions of the Guidelines have long been informally referred to by a name made up of the letter P (for Proposal) followed by a digit. The current release is one of the many releases of the fifth major edition of the Guidelines, known as P5. This attribute may be used to associate a TEI document with a specific release of the P5 Guidelines, in the absence of a more precise association provided by the source attribute on the associated <schemaSpec>.
Member of model.describedResource

Contained by

core: teiCorpus

May contain

core: teiCorpus

header: teiHeader

textstructure: TEI text

Note  Should contain one TEI header for the corpus, and a series of <TEI> elements, one for each text.

Example

```xml
<teiCorpus version="3.3.0" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <teiHeader>
  <!-- header for corpus -->
  </teiHeader>
  <TEI>
    <teiHeader>
    <!-- header for first text -->
    </teiHeader>
    <text>
    <!-- content of first text -->
    </text>
  </TEI>
  <teiHeader>
  <!-- header for second text -->
  </teiHeader>
  <text>
  <!-- content of second text -->
  </text>
  </TEI>
  <!-- more TEI elements here -->
</teiCorpus>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <sequence>
    <elementRef key="teiHeader"/>
    <classRef key="model.resource" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <classRef key="model.describedResource" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element teiCorpus
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute version { text }?,
  ( teiHeader, model.resource*, model.describedResource+ )
}
```
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

<teiHeader> (TEI header) supplies descriptive and declarative metadata associated with a digital resource or set of resources. 2.1. The TEI Header and Its Components 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text

Module header
Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

Contained by core: teiCorpus
textstructure: TEI

May contain header: encodingDesc fileDesc profileDesc revisionDesc

Note One of the few elements unconditionally required in any TEI document.

Example

<teiHeader>
  <fileDesc>
    <titleStmt>
      <title>Shakespeare: the first folio (1623) in electronic form</title>
      <author>Shakespeare, William (1564–1616)</author>
    </titleStmt>
    <respStmt>
      <resp>Originally prepared by</resp>
      <name>Trevor Howard-Hill</name>
    </respStmt>
    <respStmt>
      <resp>Revised and edited by</resp>
      <name>Christine Avern-Carr</name>
    </respStmt>
  </fileDesc>
  <publicationStmt>
    <distributor>Oxford Text Archive</distributor>
    <address>13 Banbury Road, Oxford OX2 6NN, UK</address>
    <idno type="OTA">119</idno>
    <availability>
      <p>Freely available on a non-commercial basis.</p>
    </availability>
    <date when="1968">1968</date>
  </publicationStmt>
  <sourceDesc>
    <bibl>The first folio of Shakespeare, prepared by Charlton Hinman (The Norton Facsimile, 1968)</bibl>
  </sourceDesc>
</teiHeader>
Original spelling and typography is retained, except that long s and ligatured forms are not encoded.

A reference is created by assembling the following, in the reverse order as that listed here:

- the value of the preceding lb
- a period
- the value of the ancestor div2
- a space
- the value of the parent div1

A reference is created by assembling the following, in the reverse order as that listed here:

- the value of the preceding lb
- a period
- the value of the ancestor div2
- a space
- the value of the parent div1

A reference is created by assembling the following, in the reverse order as that listed here:

- the value of the preceding lb
- a period
- the value of the ancestor div2
- a space
- the value of the parent div1

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <sequence>
    <elementRef key="fileDesc"/>
    <classRef key="model.teiHeaderPart" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <elementRef key="revisionDesc" minOccurs="0"/>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element teiHeader
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( fileDesc, model.teiHeaderPart*, revisionDesc? )
}
```

(term) contains a single-word, multi-word, or symbolic designation which is regarded as a technical term. [3.4.1. Terms and Glosses]
Module core

Attributes:
- `att.global` (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend))
- `att.global.linking` (@corresp, @next, @prev) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
- `att.global.facs` (@facs)
- `att.global.responsibility` (@cert, @resp)
- `att.global.source` (@source)
- `att.declaring` (@decls)
- `att.pointing` (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate)
- `att.typed` (@type, @subtype)
- `att.canonical` (@key, @ref)
- `att.sortable` (@sortKey)
- `att.cReferencing` (@cRef)

Member of `model.emphLike`

Contained by:
- `analysis`: 8
- `core`: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi index item l label mentioned name note num orig p pb ptr q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear
- `figures`: cell figDesc
- `header`: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder keywords language licence principal sponsor
- `linking`: seg
- `tagdocs`: eg
- `textstructure`: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain:
- `analysis`: interp interpGrp pc s w
- `core`: abbr add addressGrp address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear
- `figures`: figure formula
- `header`: idno
- `linking`: anchor seg
- `tagdocs`: att code gi ident val

Character data

Note: When this element appears within an `<index>` element, it is understood to supply the form under which an index entry is to be made for that location. Elsewhere, it is understood simply to indicate that its content is to be regarded as a technical or specialised term. It may be associated with a `<gloss>` element by means of its `ref` attribute; alternatively a `<gloss>` element may point to a `<term>` element by means of its `target` attribute.

In formal terminological work, there is frequently discussion over whether terms must be atomic or may include multi-word lexical items, symbolic designations, or phraseological units. The `<term>` element may be used to mark any of these. No position is taken on the philosophical issue of what a term can be; the looser definition simply allows the `<term>` element to be used by practitioners of any persuasion.

As with other members of the `att.canonical` class, instances of this element occuring in a text may be associated with a canonical definition, either by means of a URI (using the `ref` attribute), or by means of some system-specific code value (using the `key` attribute). Because the mutually exclusive `target` and `cRef` attributes overlap with the function of the `ref` attribute, they are deprecated and may be removed at a subsequent release.
A computational device that infers structure from grammatical strings of words is known as a <term>parser</term>, and much of the history of NLP over the last 20 years has been occupied with the design of parsers.

We may define <term xml:id="TDPV1" rend="sc">discoursal point of view</term> as <gloss target="#TDPV1">the relationship, expressed through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other addresser, and the fiction.</gloss>

We may define <term ref="#TDPV2" rend="sc">discoursal point of view</term> as <gloss xml:id="TDPV2">the relationship, expressed through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other addresser, and the fiction.</gloss>

We discuss Leech’s concept of <term ref="myGlossary.xml#TDPV2" rend="sc">discoursal point of view</term> below.

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
<element term {
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  att.cReferencing.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

<text> (text) contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, for example a poem or drama, a collection of essays, a novel, a dictionary, or a corpus sample. 4. Default Text Structure 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text

Module textstructure

Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

(att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.written (@hand)

Member of model.resource

Contained by
core: teiCorpus
textstructure: TEI group

May contain
analysis: interp interpGrp
core: gap index lb milestone note pb
figures: figure
linking: anchor
textstructure: back body front group

Note This element should not be used to represent a text which is inserted at an arbitrary point within the structure of another, for example as in an embedded or quoted narrative; the <floatingText> is provided for this purpose.

Example

<text>
  <front>
    <docTitle>
      <titlePart>Autumn Haze</titlePart>
    </docTitle>
  </front>
  <body>
    <l>Is it a dragonfly or a maple leaf?</l>
    <l>That settles softly down upon the water?</l>
  </body>
</text>

Example The body of a text may be replaced by a group of nested texts, as in the following schematic:

<text>
  <front> <!-- front matter for the whole group -->
  </front>  
  <group>  
    <!-- first text -->  
    <text>
      <!-- first text -->  
    </text>    
    <!-- second text -->  
    <text>
      <!-- second text -->  
    </text>  
  </group>  
</text>

Content model

<content>
  <sequence>
    <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <sequence minOccurs="0">
      <elementRef key="front"/>
      <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
  </sequence>
</content>
<textClass>

Schema Declaration

```
<elementRef key="body"/>
<elementRef key="group"/>
</alternate>
<classRef key="model.global"
  minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
<sequence minOccurs="0">
  <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

`<elementRef key="body"/>`
`<elementRef key="group"/>`
`<sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</sequence>`

**<textClass>** (text classification) groups information which describes the nature or topic of a text in terms of a standard classification scheme, thesaurus, etc. [2.4.3. The Text Classification]

**Module header**

Attributes `att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space ) att.global.rendition ( @rend )`
`att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev ) att.global.analytic ( @ana )`
`att.global.facs ( @facs ) att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ) att.global.source ( @source ) att.declarable ( @default )`

**Member of model.profileDescPart**

**Contained by**

`<header>`
`profileDesc`

**May contain**

`<header>`
`catRef` `classCode` `keywords`

**Example**

```
<taxonomy>
    <category xml:id="acprose"/>
    <catDesc>Academic prose</catDesc>
</category>
<!-- other categories here -->
</taxonomy>
<!-- ... -->
<textClass>
    <catRef target="#acprose"/>
```

223
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

<classCode scheme="http://www.udcc.org">001.9</classCode>
<keywords scheme="http://authorities.loc.gov">
  <list>
    <item>End of the world</item>
    <item>History - philosophy</item>
  </list>
</keywords>
</textClass>

Content model

<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <elementRef key="classCode"/>
    <elementRef key="catRef"/>
    <elementRef key="keywords"/>
  </alternate>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element textClass
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  ( classCode | catRef | keywords )*
}

<time> (time) contains a phrase defining a time of day in any format. [3.6.4. Dates and Times]
Module core

Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition ( @rend))
(att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic ( @ana))
(att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp)) (att.global.source ( @source))
(att.datable ( @period)) (att.datable.w3c ( @when)) att.canonical ( @key, @ref) att.editLike ( @evidence, @instant) att.dimensions ( @unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope)
(att.ranging ( @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) att.typed ( @type, @subtype)

Member of model.dateLike

Contained by

analysis: 8

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item label mentioned name note num p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

tables: 57

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder

language licence principal sponsor

linking: seg
tagdocs: eg

224
As he sat smiling, the quarter struck — \(<\text{time} \text{when}="11:45:00">\text{the quarter to twelve}\</text{time}>\).
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.enumerated

Sample values include: main main title
sub (subordinate) subtitle, title of part
alt (alternate) alternate title, often in another language, by which the work is also known
short abbreviated form of title
desc (descriptive) descriptive paraphrase of the work functioning as a title

Note This attribute is provided for convenience in analysing titles and processing them according to their type: where such specialized processing is not necessary, there is no need for such analysis, and the entire title, including subtitles and any parallel titles, may be enclosed within a single <title> element.

@level indicates the bibliographic level for a title, that is, whether it identifies an article, book, journal, series, or unpublished material.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.enumerated

Legal values are: a (analytic) the title applies to an analytic item, such as an article, poem, or other work published as part of a larger item.
m (monographic) the title applies to a monograph such as a book or other item considered to be a distinct publication, including single volumes of multi-volume works
j (journal) the title applies to any serial or periodical publication such as a journal, magazine, or newspaper
s (series) the title applies to a series of otherwise distinct publications such as a collection
u (unpublished) the title applies to any unpublished material (including theses and dissertations unless published by a commercial press)

Note The level of a title is sometimes implied by its context: for example, a title appearing directly within an <analytic> element is ipso facto of level a, and one appearing within a <series> element of level s. For this reason, the level attribute is not required in contexts where its value can be unambiguously inferred. Where it is supplied in such contexts, its value should not contradict the value implied by its parent element.

Member of model.emphLike
Contained by
analysis:

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear
figures: cell figDesc
header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal seriesStmt sponsor titleStmt
linking: seg

226
Note The attributes key and ref, inherited from the class att.canonical may be used to indicate the canonical form for the title; the former, by supplying (for example) the identifier of a record in some external library system; the latter by pointing to an XML element somewhere containing the canonical form of the title.

Example


Example

<title>Hardy's Tess of the D'Urbervilles: a machine readable edition</title>

Example

<title type="full"></title>
<title type="main">Synthèse</title>
<title type="sub">an international journal for epistemology, methodology and history of science</title>
</title>

Content model

<content>
<macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element title
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attribute_subtype,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  att.datable.attributes,
  attribute type { text }?,
  attribute level { "a" | "m" | "j" | "s" | "u" }?,
  macro.paraContent}
<titlePage> (title page) contains the title page of a text, appearing within the front or back matter. [4.6. Title Pages]

Module textstructure

Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend) att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

@type classifies the title page according to any convenient typology.

Derived from att.typed

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Note This attribute allows the same element to be used for volume title pages, series title pages, etc., as well as for the main title page of a work.

Member of model.frontPart

Contained by textstructure: back front

May contain analysis: interp interpGrp

core: gap graphic index lb milestone note pb

figures: figure

linking: anchor

textstructure: argument byline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph imprimatur titlePart

Example

<titlePage>
<docTitle>
<titlePart type="main">THOMAS OF Reading.</titlePart>
<titlePart type="alt">OR, The sixe worthy yeomen of the West.</titlePart>
</docTitle>
<docEdition>Now the fourth time corrected and enlarged</docEdition>
<byline>By T.D.</byline>
<figure>
<head>TP</head>
<p>Thou shalt labor till thou returne to duste</p>
<figDesc>Printers Ornament used by TP</figDesc>
</figure>
<docImprint>Printed at <name type="place">London</name> for <name type="person">T.P.</name> 1612.</docImprint>
</titlePage>

Content model

<content>
<sequence>
<classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
<classRef key="model.titlepagePart"/>
<alternate minOccurs="0"/>
Schema Declaration

element titlePage
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attribute.subtype,
   attribute type { text }?,
   
   model.global*,
   model.titlepagePart,
   ( model.titlepagePart | model.global )* 
}

\[titlePart\] (title part) contains a subsection or division of the title of a work, as indicated on a title page.  [4.6. Title Pages]

Module textstructure

Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend))
( att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
( att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))(att.typed (@subtype))
@type (type) specifies the role of this subdivision of the title.

Derived from att.typed

Status Optional

Datatype |eidata.enumerated|

Suggested values include: main (main) main title of the work[Default]
sub (subordinate) subtitle of the work
alt (alternate) alternative title of the work
short (short) abbreviated form of title
desc (descriptive) descriptive paraphrase of the work

Member of model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by
textstructure:  back docTitle front titlePage

May contain
analysis:  interp interpGrp pc s w
core:  abbr add address bibl choice cit cor date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb l g list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig ph ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear
figures:  figure formula table
header:  idno
linking:  anchor seg
tagdocs:  att code eg gi ident val
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

character data

Example

```xml
<docTitle>
  <titlePart type="main">THE FORTUNES
   AND MISFORTUNES Of the FAMOUS
   Moll Flanders, &c.
  </titlePart>
  <titlePart type="desc">Who was BORN in NEWGATE,
   And during a Life of continu'd Variety for
   Threescore Years, besides her Childhood, was
   Twelve Year a <hi>Whore</hi>, five times a <hi>Wife</hi> (wherof
   once to her own Brother) Twelve Year a <hi>Thief</hi>,
   Eight Year a Transported <hi>Felon</hi> in <hi>Virginia</hi>,
   at last grew <hi>Rich</hi>, liv'd <hi>Honest</hi>, and died a
   <hi>Penitent</hi>.
</titlePart>
</docTitle>
```

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element titlePart
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attribute.subtype,
   attribute type { "main" | "sub" | "alt" | "short" | "desc" }?,
   macro.paraContent
}
```

```
<titleStmt> (title statement) groups information about the title of a work and those
responsible for its content. [2.2.1. The Title Statement [2.2. The File Description]

Module header
Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space ) (att.global.rendition ( @rend ))
   (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev )) (att.global.analytic ( @ana ))
   (att.global.facs ( @facs )) (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp )) (att.global.source ( @source ))

Contained by header: fileDesc
May contain core: author editor respStmt title
header: funder principal sponsor
Example
```
```
<titleStmt>
  <title>Capgrave's Life of St. John Norbert: a machine-readable
   transcription</title>
  <respStmt>
    <resp>compiled by</resp>
    <name>P. J. Lucas</name>
```
Content model

```xml
<content>
  <sequence>
    <elementRef key="title" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <classRef key="model.respLike" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element titleStmt { att.global.attributes, ( title+, model.respLike* ) }
```

<trailer> contains a closing title or footer appearing at the end of a division of a text.

[4.2.4. Content of Textual Divisions][4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]

Module textstructure

- **Attributes**
  - `att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)`
  - `att.global.rendition (@rend)`
  - `att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)`
  - `att.global.analytic (@ana)`
  - `att.global.facs (@facs)`
  - `att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)`
  - `att.global.source (@source)`
  - `att.typed (@type, @subtype)`
  - `att.placement (@place)`
  - `att.written (@hand)`

- **Member of**
  - `model.divBottomPart`

- **Contained by**
  - Core: `lg list`
  - Figures: `figure table`
  - Textstructure: `back body div front group postscript`

- **May contain**
  - Analysis: `interp interpGrp pc s w`
  - Core: `abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear`
  - Figures: `figure formula table`
  - Header: `idno`
  - Linking: `anchor seg`
  - Tagdocs: `att code eg gi ident val`

**Example**

```xml
<trailer>Explicit pars tertia</trailer>
```

**Example**

```xml
<l>In stead of FINIS this advice <hi>Ich</hi> send,</l>
<l>Let Rogues and Thieves beware of <lb/>
```

231
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

From EEBO A87070

Content model

```
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <TextNode/>
    <elementRef key="lg"/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
    <classRef key="model.inter"/>
    <classRef key="model.lLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element trailer
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  att.written.attributes,
  {
    text
    | lg | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.inter | model.lLike | model.global
  }
}
```

<unclear> (unclear) contains a word, phrase, or passage which cannot be transcribed with certainty because it is illegible or inaudible in the source. [11.3.1. Damage, Illegibility, and Supplied Text 3.5.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions]

Module core

Attributes  
att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))

@reason indicates why the material is hard to transcribe.

Status Optional

Datatype  1–∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace

Suggested values include: illegible (illegible)
  inaudible (inaudible)
  faded (faded)
  background_noise (background noise)
eccentric_ductus (eccentric ductus) indicates illegibility due to an unusual, awkward, or incompetent execution of a glyph or glyphs

Note One or more words may be used to describe the reason; usually each word will refer to a single cause.

@agent Where the difficulty in transcription arises from damage, categorizes the cause of the damage, if it can be identified.

Status Optional

Sample values include: rubbing damage results from rubbing of the leaf edges

mildew damage results from mildew on the leaf surface

smoke damage results from smoke

Member of [model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional]

Contained by [analysis: pc s w]

core: abbr | add | addrLine | author | bibl | biblScope | choice | corr | date | del | editor | emph | expan | foreign | gloss | head | hi | item | l | label | lg | mentioned | name | note | num | orig | pb | publisher | q | ref | reg | rs | sic | soCalled | speaker | stage | term | time | title | unclear

figures: cell

header: change | distributor | edition | extent | licence

tagdocs: eg

textstructure: byline | closer | dateline | docAuthor | docDate | docEdition | docImprint | imprimatur | opener | salute | signed | titlePart | trailer

May contain

analysis: interp | interpGrp | pc | s | w

core: abbr | add | address | bibl | choice | cit | corr | date | del | desc | emph | expan | foreign | gap | gloss | graphic | hi | index | l | label | lb | lg | list | listBibl | mentioned | milestone | name | note | num | orig | pb | ptr | q | ref | reg | rs | sic | soCalled | stage | term | time | title | unclear

figures: figure | formula | table

header: idno

linking: anchor | seg

tagdocs: att | code | eg | g1 | ident | val

character data

Note The same element is used for all cases of uncertainty in the transcription of element content, whether for written or spoken material. For other aspects of certainty, uncertainty, and reliability of tagging and transcription, see chapter 21. Certainty, Precision, and Responsibility.

The <damage>, <gap>, <del>, <unclear> and <supplied> elements may be closely allied in use. See section 11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

The hand attribute points to a definition of the hand concerned, as further discussed in section 11.3.2.1. Document Hands.

Example

<u> ...and then <unclear reason="background-noise">Nathalie</unclear> said ...
</u>

Content model

```xml
<content>
<macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element unclear {
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.dimensions.attributes,
  attribute reason {
    list {
      "illegible"
      "inaudible"
      "faded"
      "background_noise"
      "eccentric_ductus"
    }+
  }
  attribute agent { text }?,
  macro.paraContent
}
```

<val> (value) contains a single attribute value. [22. Documentation Elements 22.5.3. Attribute List Specification]

Module tagdocs

Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.facets (@facs)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

Member of model.phrase.xml

Contained by

analysis: 8

core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor

linking: seg
Example: This example is adapted from the Folger Library's Early Modern English Drama version of The Wits: a Comedy by William Davenant.

\[
\text{\textless }w\text{\textgreater } \begin{array}{c}
\text{\textless }\text{w} \text{\textless } \text{lemma}=\text{it} \text{\textgreater } \text{pos}=\text{pn} \\
\text{xml:id}=\text{A19883-003-a-0100}\text{\textgreater } \text{IT}\text{\textless }w\text{\textgreater }\\
\text{\textless }\text{w} \text{\textless } \text{lemma}=\text{have} \text{\textgreater } \text{pos}=\text{vvz} \\
\text{xml:id}=\text{A19883-003-a-0110}\text{\textgreater } \text{hath}\text{\textless }w\text{\textgreater }
\end{array}
\]
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Content model

```xml
<content>
<alternate minOccurs="0"/>
</content>
```
A.2 Model classes

model.addrPart groups elements such as names or postal codes which may appear as part of a postal address. [3.6.2. Addresses]

Module tei

Used by address

Members model.nameLike | model.nameLike.agent | name | model.offsetLike | model.placeStateLike | model.placeNamePart | idno | rs | addrLine

model.addressLike groups elements used to represent a postal or email address. [1. The TEI Infrastructure]

Module tei

Used by model.pPart.data

Members address

model.attributable groups elements that contain a word or phrase that can be attributed to a source. [3.3.3. Quotation | 4.3.2. Floating Texts]

Module tei

Used by cit | macro.phraseSeq | model.inter | sp

Members model.quoteLike | cit
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

**model.availabilityPart** groups elements such as licences and paragraphs of text which may appear as part of an availability statement [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]

*Module* tei

*Used by* availability

*Members* licence

**model.biblLike** groups elements containing a bibliographic description. [3.12. Bibliographic Citations and References]

*Module* tei

*Used by* cit listBibl model.inter relatedItem sourceDesc taxonomy

*Members* bibl listBibl

**model.biblPart** groups elements which represent components of a bibliographic description. [3.12. Bibliographic Citations and References]

*Module* tei

*Used by* bibl

*Members* model.imprintPart(biblScope distributor pubPlace publisher) model.respLike(author editor funder principal respStmt sponsor) availability bibl edition extent relatedItem

**model.choicePart** groups elements (other than `<choice>` itself) which can be used within a `<choice>` alternation. [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes]

*Module* tei

*Used by* choice

*Members* abbr corr expan orig reg seg sic unclear

**model.common** groups common chunk- and inter-level elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

*Module* tei

*Used by* argument body div epigraph figure postscript

*Members* model.divPart(model.llike) model.pLike(lg sp) model.inter model.attributable(model.quoteLike(cit)) model.biblLike(bibl listBibl) model.egLike(eg) model.labelLike(desc label) model.listLike(list table) model.oddDecl model.stageLike(stage) q

*Note* This class defines the set of chunk- and inter-level elements; it is used in many content models, including those for textual divisions.

**model.dateLike** groups elements containing temporal expressions. [3.6.4. Dates and Times]

*Module* tei

238
model.descLike groups elements which contain a description of their function.

Module tei
Used by category gap graphic interp interpGrp taxonomy
Members desc

model.describedResource groups elements which contain the content of a digital resource and its metadata; these elements may serve as the outermost or root element of a TEI-conformant document [1.3. The TEI Class System]

Module tei
Used by teiCorpus
Members TEI teiCorpus

model.divBottom groups elements appearing at the end of a text division. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]

Module tei
Used by body div figure front group lg list table
Members model.divBottomPart [closer postscript signed trailer]
model.divWrapper [argument byline dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph salute]

model.divBottomPart groups elements which can occur only at the end of a text division. [4.6. Title Pages]

Module tei
Used by back model.divBottom postscript
Members closer postscript signed trailer

model.divGenLike groups elements used to represent a structural division which is generated rather than explicitly present in the source.

Module tei
Used by body div
Members divGen

model.divLike groups elements used to represent un-numbered generic structural divisions.

Module tei
Used by back body div front
Members div
**A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED**

**model.divPart** groups paragraph-level elements appearing directly within divisions.  

[1.3. The TEI Class System]

*Module*  
*tei*

*Used by*  
*macro.specialPara model.common*

*Members*  
*model.lLike l model.pLike p lg sp*

*Note*  
Note that this element class does not include members of the *model.inter* class, which can appear either within or between paragraph-level items.

---

**model.divTop** groups elements appearing at the beginning of a text division.  

[4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]

*Module*  
*tei*

*Used by*  
*body div group lg list*

*Members*  
*model.divTopPart model.headLike head opener signed*

model.divWrapper argument byline dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph salute

---

**model.divTopPart** groups elements which can occur only at the beginning of a text division.  

[4.6. Title Pages]

*Module*  
*tei*

*Used by*  
*model.divTop postscript*

*Members*  
*model.headLike head opener signed*

---

**model.divWrapper** groups elements which can appear at either top or bottom of a textual division.  

[4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]

*Module*  
*tei*

*Used by*  
*model.divBottom model.divTop*

*Members*  
*argument byline dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph salute*

---

**model.egLike** groups elements containing examples or illustrations.  

[22.1.1. Phrase Level Terms]

*Module*  
*tei*

*Used by*  
*cit model.inter*

*Members*  
*eg*

---

**model.emphLike** groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct and to which a specific function can be attributed.  

[3.3. Highlighting and Quotation]

*Module*  
*tei*

*Used by*  
*model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase*

*Members*  
*code emph foreign gloss ident mentioned soCalled term title*
**model.encodingDescPart** groups elements which may be used inside `<encodingDesc>` and appear multiple times.

*Module* tei

*Used by* encodingDesc

*Members* classDecl editorialDecl projectDesc refsDecl samplingDecl

---

**model.frontPart** groups elements which appear at the level of divisions within front or back matter. [7.1. Front and Back Matter]

*Module* tei

*Used by* back front

*Members* model.frontPart.drama divGen listBibl titlePage

---

**model.global** groups elements which may appear at any point within a TEI text. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

*Module* tei

*Used by* address argument back bibl body byline cite closer date dateline div docImprint docTitle epigraph figure front group header head lg list macro.phraseSeq macro.phraseSeq.limited macro.specialPara model.paraPart opener postscript sp table text time titlePage trailer w

*Members* model.global.edit [gap] model.global.meta [index interp interpGrp]

model.milestoneLike [anchor lb milestone pb] model.noteLike [note] figure

---

**model.global.edit** groups globally available elements which perform a specifically editorial function. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.global

*Members* gap

---

**model.global.meta** groups globally available elements which describe the status of other elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.global

*Members* index interp interpGrp

*Note* Elements in this class are typically used to hold groups of links or of abstract interpretations, or by provide indications of certainty etc. It may find be convenient to localize all metadata elements, for example to contain them within the same division as the elements that they relate to; or to locate them all to a division of their own. They may however appear at any point in a TEI text.

---

**model.graphicLike** groups elements containing images, formulae, and similar objects. [3.10. Graphics and Other Non-textual Components]

*Module* tei

241
**A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED**

*Used by* cit figure formula model.phrase table

*Members* formula graphic

---

**model.headLike** groups elements used to provide a title or heading at the start of a text division.

*Module* tei

*Used by* argument divGen figure listBibl model.divTopPart table

*Members* head

---

**model.hiLike** groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct but to which no specific function can be attributed. [3.3. Highlighting and Quotation]

*Module* tei

*Used by* formula model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase w

*Members* hi q

---

**model.highlighted** groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct. [3.3. Highlighting and Quotation]

*Module* tei

*Used by* bibl model.phrase

*Members* model.emphLike code emph foreign gloss ident mentioned soCalled term title

model.hiLike hi q

---

**model.imprintPart** groups the bibliographic elements which occur inside imprints. [3.12. Bibliographic Citations and References]

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.biblPart

*Members* biblScope distributor pubPlace publisher

---

**model.inter** groups elements which can appear either within or between paragraph-like elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

*Module* tei

*Used by* head macro.limitedContent macro.specialPara model.common model.paraPart trailer

*Members* model.attributable model.quoteLike cit model.biblLike bibl listBibl model.egLike eg model.labelLike desc label model.listLike list table model.oddDecl model.stageLike stage

---

**model.lLike** groups elements representing metrical components such as verse lines.

*Module* tei

*Used by* head lg model.divPart model.paraPart sp trailer
**model.labelLike** groups elements used to gloss or explain other parts of a document.

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.inter

*Members* model.labelLike

**model.limitedPhrase** groups phrase-level elements excluding those elements primarily intended for transcription of existing sources. [1.3. The TEI Class System](#)

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.inter

*Members* model.limitedPhrase

**model.listLike** groups list-like elements. [3.8. Lists](#)

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.inter

*Members* model.listLike

**model.measureLike** groups elements which denote a number, a quantity, a measurement, or similar piece of text that conveys some numerical meaning. [3.6.3. Numbers and Measures](#)

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.measureLike

*Members* model.measureLike

**model.milestoneLike** groups milestone-style elements used to represent reference systems. [1.3. The TEI Class System](#) [3.11.3. Milestone Elements](#)

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.milestoneLike

*Members* model.milestoneLike

**model.nameLike** groups elements which name or refer to a person, place, or organization.

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.nameLike

*Members* model.nameLike
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Members model.nameLike.agent name model.offsetLike model.placeStateLike model.placeNamePart idno rs

Note A superset of the naming elements that may appear in datelines, addresses, statements of responsibility, etc.

model.nameLike.agent groups elements which contain names of individuals or corporate bodies. [3.6. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses]
Module tei
Used by model.nameLike respStmt
Members name

Note This class is used in the content model of elements which reference names of people or organizations.

model.noteLike groups globally-available note-like elements. [3.9. Notes, Annotation, and Indexing]
Module tei
Used by model.global notesStmt
Members note

model.pLike groups paragraph-like elements.
Module tei
Used by availability back editionStmt editorialDecl encodingDesc front langUsage model.divPart projectDesc publicationStmt refsDecl samplingDecl seriesStmt sourceDesc sp
Members p

model.pLike.front groups paragraph-like elements which can occur as direct constituents of front matter. [4.6. Title Pages]
Module tei
Used by back front
Members argument byline dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph head titlePart

model.pPart.data groups phrase-level elements containing names, dates, numbers, measures, and similar data. [3.6. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses]
Module tei
Used by bibl model.limitedPhrase model.phrase
Members model.addressLike address model.dateLike date time model.measureLike num model.nameLike model.nameLike.agent name model.offsetLike model.placeStateLike model.placeNamePart idno rs
model.pPart.edit groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial correction and transcription. [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes]

Module tei
Used by bibl model.pPart.phrase pc w
Members model.pPart.editorial abbr choice expan model.pPart.transcriptional add corr del org reg sic unclear

model.pPart.editorial groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial interventions that may be useful both in transcribing and in authoring. [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes]

Module tei
Used by model.limitedPhrase model.pPart.edit
Members abbr choice expan

model.pPart.transcriptional groups phrase-level elements used for editorial transcription of pre-existing source materials. [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes]

Module tei
Used by ig model.pPart.edit
Members add corr del org reg sic unclear

model.paraPart groups elements that may appear in paragraphs and similar elements [3.1. Paragraphs]

Module tei
Used by macro.paraContent
Members model.gLike model.global model.global.edit gap model.global.meta index interp interpGrp model.milestoneLike anchor lb milestone pb model.noteLike note figure model.inter model.attributable model.quoteLike cit model.biblLike bibl listBibl model.eLike eg model.labelLike desc label model.listLike list table model.oddDecl model.stageLike stage model.ILike ll model.phrase model.graphicLike formula graphic model.highlighted model.emphLike code emph foreign gloss ident mentioned soCalled term title model.hlLike hi q model.lPart model.pPart.data model.addressLike address model.dateLike date time model.measureLike num model.nameLike model.nameLike.agent name model.offsetLike model.placeStateLike model.placeNamePart idno rs model.pPart.edit model.pPart.editorial abbr choice expan model.pPart.transcriptional add corr del org reg sic unclear model.pPart.msdesc model.phrase.xml att gi val model.ptrLike ptr ref model.segLike pc s seg w model.specDescLike lg

model.phrase groups elements which can occur at the level of individual words or phrases. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

Module tei
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Used by byline closer date dateline docImprint head1 macro.phraseSeq macro.specialPara model.parAPart opener time trailer

Members model.graphicLike[formula graphic] model.highlighted|model.emphLike|code emph foreign gloss ident mentioned soCalled term title model.hlLike|hi q model.iPart model.pPart.data model.addressLike|address model.dateLike|date time model.measureLike|num model.nameLike model.nameLike.agent|name model.offsetLike model.placeStateLike|model.placeNamePart|idno rs model.pPart.edit|model.pPart.editorial|abbr choice expand model.pPart.transcriptional|add corr del orig reg sic unclear model.pPart.msdesc model.phrase.xml[att|gi val|model.ptrLike|ptr ref|model.segLike|pc|seg w] model.specDescLike

Note This class of elements can occur within paragraphs, list items, lines of verse, etc.

model.phrase.xml groups phrase-level elements used to encode XML constructs such as element names, attribute names, and attribute values [22. Documentation Elements]

Module tei

Used by model.limitedPhrase model.phrase

Members att|gi val

model.placeStateLike groups elements which describe changing states of a place.

Module tei

Used by model.nameLike

Members model.placeNamePart

model.profileDescPart groups elements which may be used inside \(<\text{profileDesc}\> and appear multiple times.

Module tei

Used by profileDesc

Members creation langUsage textClass

model.ptrLike groups elements used for purposes of location and reference. [3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References]

Module tei

Used by bibl cit model.limitedPhrase model.phrase model.publicationStmtPart.detail relatedItem

Members ptr ref

model.publicationStmtPart.agency groups the child elements of a \(<\text{publicationStmt}\> element of the TEI header that indicate an authorising agent. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]

Module tei

246
Note The agency child elements, while not required, are required if one of the detail child elements is to be used. It is not valid to have a detail child element without a preceding agency child element.
See also model.publicationStmtPart.detail.

model.publicationStmtPart.detail groups the agency-specific child elements of the <publicationStmt> element of the TEI header. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]
Module tei
Used by publicationStmt
Members model.ptrLike model.resource model.quoteLike model.respLike model.segLike
Note A detail child element may not occur unless an agency child element precedes it.
See also model.publicationStmtPart.agency.

model.quoteLike groups elements used to directly contain quotations.
Module tei
Used by model.attributable
Members cit

model.resource groups separate elements which constitute the content of a digital resource, as opposed to its metadata. [1.3. The TEI Class System]
Module tei
Used by TEI teiCorpus
Members text

model.respLike groups elements which are used to indicate intellectual or other significant responsibility, for example within a bibliographic element.
Module tei
Used by editionStmt model.biblPart titleStmt
Members author editor funder principal respStmt sponsor

model.segLike groups elements used for arbitrary segmentation. [16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors 17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories]
Module tei
Used by bibl model.phrase
Members pc s seg w
Note The principles on which segmentation is carried out, and any special codes or attribute values used, should be defined explicitly in the <segmentation> element of the <encodingDesc> within the associated TEI header.
**model.stageLike** groups elements containing stage directions or similar things defined
by the module for performance texts. [7.3. Other Types of Performance Text]

*Module* tei
*Used by* model.inter

*Members* stage

*Note* Stage directions are members of class *inter*: that is, they can appear between or
within component-level elements.

**model.teiHeaderPart** groups high level elements which may appear more than
once in a TEI header.

*Module* tei
*Used by* teiHeader

*Members* encodingDesc profileDesc

**model.titlepagePart** groups elements which can occur as direct constituents of a
title page, such as `<docTitle>`, `<docAuthor>`, `<docImprint>`, or `<epigraph>`. [4.6. Title Pages]

*Module* tei
*Used by* titlePage

*Members* argument byline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph
graphic imprimatur titlePart

### A.3 Attribute classes

**att.anchoring** (anchoring) provides attributes for use on annotations, e.g. notes and
groups of notes describing the existence and position of an anchor for annotations.

*Module* tei
*Members* note

*Attributes*

@anchored (anchored) indicates whether the copy text shows the exact place of
reference for the note.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.truthValue

*Default* true

*Note* In modern texts, notes are usually anchored by means of explicit
footnote or endnote symbols. An explicit indication of the phrase or
line annotated may however be used instead (e.g. page 218, lines
3–4). The *anchored* attribute indicates whether any explicit location
is given, whether by symbol or by prose cross-reference. The value
true indicates that such an explicit location is indicated in the copy
text; the value false indicates that the copy text does not indicate a
specific place of attachment for the note. If the specific symbols
att.ascribed provides attributes for elements representing speech or action that can be ascribed to a specific individual. [3.3.3. Quotation 8.3. Elements Unique to Spoken Texts]

Module tei

Members att.ascribed.directed q sp stage change

Attributes

@who indicates the person, or group of people, to whom the element content is ascribed.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

In the following example from Hamlet, speeches (<sp>) in the body of the play are linked to <castItem> elements in the <castList> using the who attribute. <castItem type="role">
<role xml:id="Barnardo">Bernardo</role>
</castItem>
<castItem type="role">
<role xml:id="Francisco">Francisco</role>
<roleDesc>a soldier</roleDesc>
</castItem>

Note For transcribed speech, this will typically identify a
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

participant or participant group; in other contexts, it will point to any identified <person> element.

att.ascribed.directed provides attributes for elements representing speech or action that can be directed at a group or individual. 

Module: tei
Members: sp stage
Attributes: att.ascribed (@who)

@toWhom indicates the person, or group of people, to whom a speech act or action is directed.

Status: Optional

Datatype: 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

In the following example from Mary Pix's The False Friend, speeches (<sp>) in the body of the play are linked to <castItem> elements in the <castList> using the toWhom attribute, which is used to specify who the speech is directed to. Additionally, the <stage> includes toWhom to indicate the directionality of the action.

```xml
<castItem type="role">
  <role xml:id="emil">Emilius.</role>
</castItem>
<castItem type="role">
  <role xml:id="lov">Lovisa</role>
</castItem>
<castItem type="role">
  <role xml:id="serv">A servant</role>
</castItem>
<!-- ... -->
<sp who="#emil" toWhom="#lov">
  <speaker>Emil.</speaker>
  <l n="1">My love!</l>
</sp>
<sp who="#lov" toWhom="#emil">
  <speaker>Lov.</speaker>
  <l n="2">I have no Witness of my Noble Birth</l>
  <stage who="emil" toWhom="#serv">Pointing to her Woman.</stage>
  <l>But that poor helpless wretch——</l>
</sp>
```

Note: To indicate the recipient of written correspondence, use the elements used in section 2.4.6. Correspondence Description, rather than a toWhom attribute.

att.breaking provides attributes to indicate whether or not the element concerned is considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace.

Module: tei
Members: lb milestone pb
Attributes: @break indicates whether or not the element bearing this attribute should be
considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace.

**Status** Recommended

**Datatype** teidata.enumerated

Sample values include **yes** the element bearing this attribute is considered to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token irrespective of the presence of any adjacent whitespace

**no** the element bearing this attribute is considered not to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token irrespective of the presence of any adjacent whitespace

**maybe** the encoding does not take any position on this issue.

In the following lines from the ‘Dream of the Rood’, linebreaks occur in the middle of the words *lāðost* and *reord-berendum*.

```
<ab>
...eƿesa tome iy igeƿonden pita heardoƿt.
leodum la<lb break="no"/> ðost ærþan ichim lifes
peȝ rihnþ ærymde reord be<lb break="no"/>
rendum hpæt me þæþeƿeorðode puldræs ealdor ofer...
</ab>
```

---

**att.cReferencing** provides attributes that may be used to supply a canonical reference as a means of identifying the target of a pointer.

**Module** tei

**Members** gloss ptr ref term

**Attributes**

@cRef (canonical reference) specifies the destination of the pointer by supplying a canonical reference expressed using the scheme defined in a `<refsDecl>` element in the TEI header

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.text

**Note** The value of cRef should be constructed so that when the algorithm for the resolution of canonical references (described in section [16.2.5. Canonical References](#)) is applied to it the result is a valid URI reference to the intended target.

The `<refsDecl>` to use may be indicated with the decls attribute.

Currently these Guidelines only provide for a single canonical reference to be encoded on any given `<ptr>` element.

---

**att.canonical** provides attributes that can be used to associate a representation such as a name or title with canonical information about the object being named or referenced. [13.1.1. Linking Names and Their Referents](#)

**Module** tei

**Members** att.naming[att.personal[name] author editor pubPlace rs authority catDesc date distributor docAuthor docTitle funder principal publisher resp respStmt sponsor term time title]

**Attributes**

@key provides an externally-defined means of identifying the entity (or entities) being named, using a coded value of some kind.
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.text

<author>
  <name key="name 427308"
       type="organisation">[New Zealand Parliament, Legislative Council]"/name>
</author>

<author>
  <name key="Hugo, Victor (1802-1885)"
       ref="http://www.idref.fr/026927608">Victor Hugo</name>
</author>

Note The value may be a unique identifier from a database, or any other externally-defined string identifying the referent.

No particular syntax is proposed for the values of the key attribute, since its form will depend entirely on practice within a given project. For the same reason, this attribute is not recommended in data interchange, since there is no way of ensuring that the values used by one project are distinct from those used by another. In such a situation, a preferable approach for magic tokens which follows standard practice on the Web is to use a ref attribute whose value is a tag URI as defined in RFC 4151.

@ref (reference) provides an explicit means of locating a full definition or identity for the entity being named by means of one or more URIs.

Status Optional
Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

<name ref="http://viaf.org/viaf/109557338"
      type="person">Seamus Heaney</name>

Note The value must point directly to one or more XML elements or other resources by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied the implication is that the name identifies several distinct entities.

att.citing provides attributes for specifying the specific part of a bibliographic item being cited. [1.3.1. Attribute Classes]

Module tei
Members biblScope
Attributes

@unit identifies the unit of information conveyed by the element, e.g. columns, pages, volume, entry.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.enumerated

Suggested values include: volume (volume) the element contains a volume number.

issue the element contains an issue number, or volume and issue numbers.

page (page) the element contains a page number or page range.

line the element contains a line number or line range.

chapter (chapter) the element contains a chapter indication (number and/or title)

part the element identifies a part of a book or collection.
att.datable provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dates, times, or datable events. [3.6.4. Dates and Times 13.4. Dates]

Module tei

Members  
att.datable
author
change
creation
date
date
editor
funder
idno
licence
name
principal
resp
sponsor
time
title

Attributes  
@when

@period supplies pointers to one or more definitions of named periods of time (typically \texttt{<category>}s or \texttt{<calendar>}s) within which the datable item is understood to have occurred.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of \texttt{teidata.pointer} separated by whitespace

Schematron \texttt{<sch:rule context="tei:*[@calendar]"> <sch:assert test="string-length(normalize-space(.) ) gt 0"> @calendar indicates one or more systems or calendars to which the date represented by the content of this element belongs, but this \texttt{<sch:name/>} element has no textual content.</sch:assert> </sch:rule>}

Note This superclass provides attributes that can be used to provide normalized values of temporal information. By default, the attributes from the \texttt{att.datable.w3c} class are provided. If the module for names & dates is loaded, this class also provides attributes from the \texttt{att.datable.iso} and \texttt{att.datable.custom} classes. In general, the possible values of attributes restricted to the W3C datatypes form a subset of those values available via the ISO 8601 standard. However, the greater expressiveness of the ISO datatypes may not be needed, and there exists much greater software support for the W3C datatypes.


Module tei

Members  
att.datable
author
change
creation
date
date
date
editor
funder
idno
licence
name
principal
resp
sponsor
time
title

Attributes  
@when supplies the value of the date or time in a standard form, e.g.

\texttt{yyyy-mm-dd}.

Status Optional

Datatype \texttt{teidata.temporal.w3c}
Examples of W3C date, time, and date & time formats. <p>
  <date when="1945-10-24">24 Oct 45</date>
  <date when="1996-09-24T07:25:00Z">September 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</date>
  <time when="1999-01-04T20:00:05:00">Jan 4 1999 at 8 pm</time>
  <time when="14:12:38">fourteen twelve and 38 seconds</time>
  <date when="1962-10">October of 1962</date>
  <date when="--06-12">June 12th</date>
  <date when="---01">the first of the month</date>
  <date when="--08">August</date>
  <date when="2006">MMVI</date>
  <date when="0056">AD 56</date>
  <date when="-0056">56 BC</date>
</p>

This list begins in the year 1632, more precisely on Trinity Sunday, i.e. the Sunday after Pentecost, in that year the <date calendar="#julian" when="1632-06-06">27th of May (old style)</date>.

<opener>
  <dateline>
    <placeName>Dorchester, Village</placeName>
    <date when="1828-03-02">March 2d. 1828.</date>
  </dateline>
  <salute>To Mrs. Cornell</salute> Sunday <time when="12:00:00">noon</time>
</opener>

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:*[@when]">
  <sch:report test="[@notBefore|@notAfter|@from|@to]" role="nonfatal">The @when attribute cannot be used with any other att.datable.w3c attributes.</sch:report>
</sch:rule>

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:*[@from]">
  <sch:report test="[@notBefore]" role="nonfatal">The @from and @notBefore attributes cannot be used together.</sch:report>
</sch:rule>

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:*[@to]">
  <sch:report test="[@notAfter]" role="nonfatal">The @to and @notAfter attributes cannot be used together.</sch:report>
</sch:rule>

Example

      <date from="1863-05-28" to="1863-06-01">28 May through 1 June 1863</date>

Note The value of these attributes should be a normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date & time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition, using the Gregorian calendar.

The most commonly-encountered format for the date portion of a temporal attribute is yyyy-mm-dd, but yyyy, --mm, --dd, yyyy-mm, or --mm-dd may also be used. For the time part, the form hh:mm:ss is used.

Note that this format does not currently permit use of the value 0000 to represent the year 1 BCE; instead the value -0001 should be used.

att.datcat provides attributes that are used to align XML elements or attributes with the appropriate Data Categories (DCs) defined by an external taxonomy, in this way
establishing the identity of information containers and values, and providing means of interpreting them. [9.5.2. Lexical View | 18.3. Other Atomic Feature Values]

Module tei

Members att.segLike[pc s seg w]

Attributes

@datcat provides a pointer to a definition of, and/or general information about, (a) an information container (element or attribute) or (b) a value of an information container (element content or attribute value), by referencing an external taxonomy or ontology. If valueDatcat is present in the immediate context, this attribute takes on role (a), while valueDatcat performs role (b).

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

@valueDatcat provides a definition of, and/or general information about a value of an information container (element content or attribute value), by reference to an external taxonomy or ontology. Used especially where a contrast with datcat is needed.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

@targetDatcat provides a definition of, and/or general information about, information structure of an object referenced or modeled by the containing element, by reference to an external taxonomy or ontology. This attribute has the characteristics of the datcat attribute, except that it addresses not its containing element, but an object that is being referenced or modeled by its containing element.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Example The example below presents the TEI encoding of the name-value pair <part of speech, common noun>, where the name (key) part of speech is abbreviated as POS, and the value, common noun is symbolized by NN. The entire name-value pair is encoded by means of the element <f>. In TEI XML, that element acts as the container, labeled with the name attribute. Its contents may be complex or simple. In the case at hand, the content is the symbol NN. The datcat attribute relates the feature name (i.e., the key) to the data category part of speech, while the attribute valueDatcat relates the feature value to the data category common noun. Both these data categories should be defined in an external and preferably open reference taxonomy or ontology.

```
<fs>
  <f name="POS"
    datcat="http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-396_5a972b93-2294-ab5c-a541-7c344c5f26c3">
    <symbol valueDatcat="http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-1256_7ec6083c-23d4-224d-6f94-eecbe6861545" value="NN"/>
  </f>
</fs>
```

NN is the symbol for common noun used e.g. in the CLAWS-7 tagset defined by the University Centre for Computer Corpus Research on Language at the University of Lancaster. The very same data category used for tagging an early version of the British National Corpus, and coming from the BNC Basic (C5) tagset, uses the symbol NN0 (rather than NN). Making these values semantically interoperable would be extremely difficult without a human expert if they were not anchored in a single point of an established reference taxonomy of morphosyntactic data categories. In the case at hand, the string http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-1256_7ec6083c-23d4-224d-6f94-eecbe6861545
is both a persistent identifier of the data category in question, as well as a pointer to a shared definition of \textit{common noun}. While the symbols NN, NN0, and many others (often coming from languages other than English) are implicitly members of the container category part of speech, it is sometimes useful not to rely on such an implicit relationship but rather use an explicit identifier for that data category, to distinguish it from other morphosyntactic data categories, such as gender, tense, etc. For that purpose, the above example uses the \textit{datcat} attribute to reference a \textit{definition of part of speech}. The reference taxonomy in this example is the CLARIN Concept Registry. If the feature structure markup exemplified above is to be repeated many times in a single document, it is much more efficient to collect the persistent identifiers in a single place and to only reference them, implicitly or directly, from feature structure markup. The following example is much more concise than the one above and relies on the concepts of feature structure declaration and feature value library, discussed in chapter FS.

\begin{verbatim}
<fs>
  <f name="POS" fVal="#commonNoun"/>
</fs>
\end{verbatim}

The assumption here is that the relevant feature values are collected in a place that the annotation document in question has access to — preferably, a single document per linguistic resource, for example an \texttt{<fsdDecl>} that is XIncluded as a sibling of \texttt{<text>} or a child of \texttt{<encodingDesc>}; a \texttt{<taxonomy>} available resource-wide (e.g., in a shared header) is also an option. The example below presents an \texttt{<fvLib>} element that collects the relevant feature values (most of them omitted). At the same time, this example shows one way of encoding a \textit{tagset}, i.e., an established inventory of values of (in the case at hand) morphosyntactic categories.

\begin{verbatim}
<fvLib n="POS values">
  <symbol xml:id="commonNoun" value="NN"
    datcat="http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-396_5a972b93-2294-ab5c-a541-7c344c5f26c3"/>
  <symbol xml:id="properNoun" value="NP"
    datcat="http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-1371_fbebd9ec-a7f4-9a36-d6e9-88ee16b944ae"/>
</fvLib>
\end{verbatim}

Note that these Guidelines do not prescribe a specific choice between \textit{datcat} and \textit{valueDatcat} in such cases. The former is the generic way of referencing a data category, whereas the latter is more specific, in that it references a data category that represents a value. The choice between them comes into play where a single element — or a tight element complex, such as the \texttt{<f>}/\texttt{<symbol>} complex illustrated above — make it necessary or useful to distinguish between the container data category and its value.

\textbf{Example} In the context of dictionaries designed with semantic interoperability in mind, the following example ensures that the \texttt{<pos>} element is interpreted as the same information container as in the case of the example of \texttt{<f name="POS"}> above.

\begin{verbatim}
<gramGrp>
  <pos datcat="http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-396_5a972b93-2294-ab5c-a541-7c344c5f26c3"/>
  <valueDatcat="http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-1256_7ec6083c-23d4-224d-6f94-eeceb6861545"/>
</gramGrp>
\end{verbatim}

Efficiency of this type of interoperable markup demands that the references to the particular data categories should best be provided in a single place within the dictionary (or a single place within the project), rather than being repeated inside every entry. For the container elements, this can be achieved at the level of \texttt{<tagUsage>}, although here, the \textit{valueDatcat} attribute should be used, because it is not the \texttt{<tagUsage>} element that is associated with the relevant data category, but rather the element \texttt{<pos> (or <case>, etc.)} that is described by \texttt{<tagUsage>}:
Another possibility is to shorten the URIs by means of the <prefixDef> mechanism, as illustrated below:

This mechanism creates implications that are not always wanted, among others, in the case at hand, suggesting that the identifiers pos and adj belong to a namespace associated with the CLARIN Concept Repository (CCR), whereas that is solely a shorthand mechanism whose scope is the current resource. Documenting this clearly in the header of the dictionary is therefore advised. Yet another possibility is to associate the information about the relationship between a TEI markup element and the data category that it is intended to model already at the level of modeling the dictionary resource, that is, at the level of the ODD, in <equiv> element that is a child of <elementSpec> or <attDef>.

Example The targetDatcat attribute is designed to be used in, e.g., feature structure declarations, and is analogous to the targetLang attribute of the att.pointing class, in that it describes the object that is being referenced, rather than the referencing object.
Above, the `<fDecl>` uses `targetDatcat`, because if it were to use `datcat`, it would be asserting that it is an instance of the container data category `part of speech`, whereas it is not — it models a container(`<f>`) that encodes a part of speech. Note also that it is the `<f>` that is modeled above, not its values, which are used as direct references to data categories; hence the use of `datcat` in the `<symbol>` element.

Note The TEI Abstract Model can be expressed as a hierarchy of attribute-value matrices (AVMs) of various types and of various levels of complexity, nested or grouped in various ways. At the most abstract level, an AVM consists of an information container and the value (contents) of that container.

A simple example of an XML serialization of such structures is, on the one hand, the opening and closing tags that delimit and name the container, and, on the other, the content enclosed by the two tags that constitutes the value. An analogous example is an attribute name and the value of that attribute.

In a TEI XML example of two equivalent serializations expressing the name-value pair `<part-of-speech, common-noun>`, namely `<pos>commonNoun</pos>` and `pos="common-noun"`, one would classify the element `<pos>` and the attribute `pos` as containers (mapping onto the first member of the relevant name-value pair), while the character data content of `<pos>` or the value of `pos` would be seen as mapping onto the second member of the pair.

The `att.datcat` class provides means of addressing the containers and their values, while at the same time providing a way to interpret them in the context of external taxonomies or ontologies. Aligning e.g. both the `<pos>` element and the `pos` attribute with the same value of an external reference point (i.e., an entry in an agreed taxonomy) affirms the identity of the concept serialised by both the element container and the attribute container, and optionally provides a definition of that concept (in the case at hand, the concept `part of speech`).

The value of the `att.datcat` attributes should be a PID (persistent identifier) that points to a specific — and, ideally, shared — taxonomy or ontology. Among the resources that can, to a lesser or greater extent, be used as inventories of (more or less) standardized linguistic categories are the GOLD ontology, CLARIN CCR, OLiA, or TermWeb’s DatCatInfo, and also the Universal Dependencies inventory, on the assumption that its URIs are going to persist. It is imaginable that a project may choose to address a local taxonomy store instead, but this risks losing the advantage of interchangeability with other projects.

Historically, `datcat` and `valueDatcat` originate from the (the now obsolete) ISO 12620:2009 standard, describing the data model and procedures for a Data Category Registry (DCR). The current version of that standard, ISO 12620-1, does not standardize the serialization of pointers, merely mentioning the TEI `att.datcat` as an example.

Note that no constraint prevents the occurrence of a combination of `att.datcat` attributes: the `<fDecl>` element, which is a natural bearer of the `targetDatcat` attribute, is an instance of a specific modeling element, and, in principle, could be semantically fixed by an appropriate reference taxonomy of modeling devices.
**att.declarable** provides attributes for those elements in the TEI header which may be independently selected by means of the special purpose `decls` attribute. [15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text]

.Module tei

.Members availability bibl editorialDecl langUsage listBibl projectDesc refsDecl samplingDecl seriesStmt sourceDesc textClass

.Attributes

@default indicates whether or not this element is selected by default when its parent is selected.

- **Status** Optional
- **Datatype** teidata.truthValue
- **Legal values are:** true This element is selected if its parent is selected false This element can only be selected explicitly, unless it is the only one of its kind, in which case it is selected if its parent is selected.[Default]

The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter 15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text. Only one element of a particular type may have a `default` attribute with a value of true.

---

**att.declaring** provides attributes for elements which may be independently associated with a particular declarable element within the header, thus overriding the inherited default for that element. [15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text]

.Module tei

.Members back body div front gloss graphic group lg p ptr ref term text

.Attributes

@decls (declarations) identifies one or more declarable elements within the header, which are understood to apply to the element bearing this attribute and its content.

- **Status** Optional
- **Datatype** 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter 15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text.

---

**att.dimensions** provides attributes for describing the size of physical objects.

.Module tei

.Members add date del gap time unclear

.Attributes

@ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)
- **Status** Optional
- **Datatype** teidata.enumerated
- **Suggested values include:** cm (centimetres)
  - mm (millimetres)
  - in (inches)
  - line lines of text
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

char (characters) characters of text
@quantity specifies the length in the units specified
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.numeric
@extent indicates the size of the object concerned using a project-specific vocabulary combining quantity and units in a single string of words.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.text

<gap extent="5 words"/>
<height extent="half the page"/>

@precision characterizes the precision of the values specified by the other attributes.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.certainty

@scope where the measurement summarizes more than one observation, specifies the applicability of this measurement.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.enumerated
Sample values include: all measurement applies to all instances.
most measurement applies to most of the instances inspected.
range measurement applies to only the specified range of instances.

att.divLike provides attributes common to all elements which behave in the same way as divisions. [4. Default Text Structure]
Module tei
Members div lg
Attributes att.fragmentable (@part)

@org (organization) specifies how the content of the division is organized.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.enumerated
Legal values are: composite no claim is made about the sequence in which the immediate contents of this division are to be processed, or their inter-relationships.
uniform the immediate contents of this element are regarded as forming a logical unit, to be processed in sequence.[Default]

@sample indicates whether this division is a sample of the original source and if so, from which part.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.enumerated
Legal values are: initial division lacks material present at end in source.
medial division lacks material at start and end.
final division lacks material at start.
unknown position of sampled material within original unknown.
complete division is not a sample.[Default]
**att.docStatus** provides attributes for use on metadata elements describing the status of a document.

**Module** tei

**Members** bibl change revisionDesc

**Attributes**

@status describes the status of a document either currently or, when associated with a dated element, at the time indicated.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.enumerated

*Sample values include:* approved, candidate, cleared, deprecated, draft [Default], embargoed, expired, frozen, galley, proposed, published, recommendation, submitted, unfinished, withdrawn

**Example**

```xml
<revisionDesc status="published">
  <change when="2010-10-21" status="published"/>
  <change when="2010-10-02" status="cleared"/>
  <change when="2010-08-02" status="embargoed"/>
  <change when="2010-05-01" status="frozen" who="#MSM"/>
  <change when="2010-03-01" status="draft" who="#LB"/>
</revisionDesc>
```

**att.editLike** provides attributes describing the nature of an encoded scholarly intervention or interpretation of any kind. [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes](10.3.1. Origination 13.3.2. The Person Element) 11.3.1. Core Elements for Transcriptional Work]

**Module** tei

**Members** att.transcriptional [add del corr date expan gap name reg time unclear]

**Attributes**

@evidence indicates the nature of the evidence supporting the reliability or accuracy of the intervention or interpretation.

**Status** Optional
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace

Suggested values include: internal there is internal evidence to support the intervention. external there is external evidence to support the intervention. conjecture the intervention or interpretation has been made by the editor, cataloguer, or scholar on the basis of their expertise.

@instant indicates whether this is an instant revision or not.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.xTruthValue

Default false

The members of this attribute class are typically used to represent any kind of editorial intervention in a text, for example a correction or interpretation, or to date or localize manuscripts etc.

Each pointer on the source (if present) corresponding to a witness or witness group should reference a bibliographic citation such as a <witness>, <msDesc>, or <bibl> element, or another external bibliographic citation, documenting the source concerned.

att.edition provides attributes identifying the source edition from which some encoded feature derives.

Module tei

Members lb, milestone, pb

Attributes

@ed (edition) supplies a sigil or other arbitrary identifier for the source edition in which the associated feature (for example, a page, column, or line break) occurs at this point in the text.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace

@edRef (edition reference) provides a pointer to the source edition in which the associated feature (for example, a page, column, or line break) occurs at this point in the text.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Example

<l>Of Mans First Disobedience, <lb ed="1674"/> and <lb ed="1667"/> the Fruit</l>
<l>Of that Forbidden Tree, whose <lb ed="1667 1674"/> mortal tast</l>
<l>Brought Death into the World, <lb ed="1667"/> and all <lb ed="1674"/> our woe, </l>

Example

<l>Of Mans First Disobedience,<lb ed="1674"/> and<lb ed="1667"/> the Fruit</l>
<l>Of that Forbidden Tree, whose<lb ed="1667 1674"/> mortal tast</l>
<l>Brought Death into the World,<lb ed="1667"/> and all<lb ed="1674"/> our woe, </l>

Example

<bibl xml:id="stapledon1937">
  <author>Olaf Stapledon</author>,
  <title>Starmaker</title>, <publisher>Methuen</publisher>,
  <date>1937</date>
</bibl>
Looking into the future aeons from the supreme moment of the cosmos, I saw the populations still with all their strength maintaining the essentials of their ancient culture, still living their personal lives in zest and endless novelty of action, ... I saw myself still preserving, though with increasing difficulty, my lucid consciousness;...
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

publicationStmt publisher ref refsDecl reg relatedItem resp respStmt revisionDesc
crow row rs salute samplingDecl seg seriesStmt sic signed soCalled sourceDesc sp
speaker sponsor stage table taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader term text textClass time
title titlePage titlePart titleStmt trailer unclear uncl val

Attributes
att.global.rendition (@rend) att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)
att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source)

@xml:id (identifier) provides a unique identifier for the element bearing the attribute.
Status Optional
Datatype ID

Note The xml:id attribute may be used to specify a canonical reference for an element; see section 3.11. Reference Systems.

@n (number) gives a number (or other label) for an element, which is not necessarily unique within the document.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.text

Note The value of this attribute is always understood to be a single token, even if it contains space or other punctuation characters, and need not be composed of numbers only. It is typically used to specify the numbering of chapters, sections, list items, etc.; it may also be used in the specification of a standard reference system for the text.

@xml:lang (language) indicates the language of the element content using a tag generated according to BCP 47.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.language

Note The xml:lang value will be inherited from the immediately enclosing element, or from its parent, and so on up the document hierarchy. It is generally good practice to specify xml:lang at the highest appropriate level, noticing that a different default may be needed for the <teiHeader> from that needed for the associated resource element or elements, and that a single TEI document may contain texts in many languages. Only attributes with free text values (rare in these guidelines) will be in the scope of xml:lang.

The authoritative list of registered language subtags is maintained by IANA and is available at http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry.

For a good general overview of the construction of language tags, see https://www.w3.org/International/articles/language-tags/, and for a practical step-by-step guide, see https://www.w3.org/International/questions/qa-choosing-language-tags.en.php.

The value used must conform with BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -x-), a <language> element with a matching value for its ident attribute should be supplied in the TEI header to document
this value. Such documentation may also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though these must remain consistent with their (IETF) Internet Engineering Task Force definitions.

@xml:space signals an intention about how white space should be managed by applications.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.enumerated

**Legal values are:**
- default signals that the application’s default white-space processing modes are acceptable
- preserve indicates the intent that applications preserve all white space

**Note** The XML specification provides further guidance on the use of this attribute. Note that many parsers may not handle xml:space correctly.

**att.global.analytic** provides additional global attributes for associating specific analyses or interpretations with appropriate portions of a text. **17.2. Global Attributes for Simple Analyses**

**Module** analysis

**Members**
- att.global
- TEI
- abbr
- add
- addrLine
- address
- anchor
- argument
- att
- author
- authority
- availability
- back
- bibl
- biblScope
- body
- byline
- catDesc
- catRef
- category
- change
- choice
- cit
- classCode
- classDecl
- closer
- code
- corr
- creation
- date
- dateline
- del
- desc
- distributor
- div
- divGen
- docAuthor
- docDate
- docEdition
- docImprint
- docTitle
- edition
- editionStmt
- editor
- editorialDecl
- eg
- emph
- encodingDesc
- epigraph
- extent
- figDesc
- figure
- fileDesc
- foreign
- formula
- front
- funder
- gap
- gi
- gloss
- graphic
- group
- head
- hi
- ident
- idno
- imprimatur
- index
- interp
- interpGrp
- item
- keywords
- l
- label
- langUsage
- lb
- lg
- licence
- list
- listBibl
- mentioned
- milestone
- name
- note
- notesStmt
- num
- opener
- orig
- p
- pb
- pc
- postscript
- principal
- profileDesc
- projectDesc
- ptr
- pubPlace
- publicationStmt
- publisher
- n
- ref
- refsDecl
- reg
- relatedItem
- resp
- respStmt
- revisionDesc
- row
- rs
- s
- salute
- samplingDecl
- seg
- seriesStmt
- sic
- signed
- soCalled
- sourceDesc
- sp
- speaker
- sponsor
- stage
- table
- taxonomy
- teiCorpus
- teiHeader
- term
- text
- textClass
- time
- title
- titlePage
- titlePart
- titleStmt
- trailer
- unclear
- val
- w

**Attributes**

@ana (analysis) indicates one or more elements containing interpretations of the element on which the **ana** attribute appears.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

**Note** When multiple values are given, they may reflect either multiple divergent interpretations of an ambiguous text, or multiple mutually consistent interpretations of the same passage in different contexts.

**att.global.facs** provides attributes used to express correspondence between an element and all or part of a facsimile image or surface. **11.1. Digital Facsimiles**

**Module** transcr

**Members**
- att.global
- TEI
- abbr
- add
- addrLine
- address
- anchor
- argument
- att
- author
- authority
- availability
- back
- bibl
- biblScope
- body
- byline
- catDesc
- catRef
- category
- change
- choice
- cit
- classCode
- classDecl
- closer
- code
- corr
- creation
- date
- dateline
- del
- desc
- distributor
- div
- divGen
- docAuthor
- docDate
- docEdition
- docImprint
- docTitle
- edition
- editionStmt
- editor
- editorialDecl
- eg
- emph
- encodingDesc
- epigraph
- extent
- figDesc
- figure
- fileDesc
- foreign
- formula
- front
- funder
- gap
- gi
- gloss
- graphic
- group
- head
- hi
- ident
- idno
- imprimatur
- index
- interp
- interpGrp
- item
- keywords
- l
- label
- langUsage
- lb
- lg
- licence
- list
- listBibl
- mentioned
- milestone
- name
- note
- notesStmt
- num
- opener
- orig
- p
- pb
- pc
- postscript
- principal
- profileDesc
- projectDesc
- ptr
- pubPlace
- publicationStmt
- publisher
- n
- ref
- refsDecl
- reg
- relatedItem
- resp
- respStmt
- revisionDesc
- row
- rs
- s
- salute
- samplingDecl
- seg
- seriesStmt
- sic
- signed
- soCalled
- sourceDesc
- sp
- speaker
- sponsor
- stage
- table
- taxonomy
- teiCorpus
- teiHeader
- term
- text
- textClass
- time
- title
- titlePage
- titlePart
- titleStmt
- trailer
- unclear
- val
- w
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Attributes

@corresp (corresponds) points to elements that correspond to the current element in some way.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

att.global/linking provides a set of attributes for hypertextual linking. [16. Linking, Segmentation, and Alignment]

Module linking

Members att.global | TEI | abbr | add | addrLine | address | anchor | argument | att | author | authority | availability | back | bib | biblScope | body | byline | catDesc | catRef | category | cell | change | choice | cit | classCode | classDecl | closer | code | corr | creation | date | dateline | del | desc | distributor | div | divGen | docAuthor | docDate | docEdition | docImprint | docTitle | edition | editionStmt | editor | editorialDecl | eg | emph | encodingDesc | epigraph | expan | extent | figDesc | figure | fileDesc | foreign | formula | front | funder | gap | gi | gloss | graphic | group | head | hi | ident | idno | imprimatur | index | interp | interpGrp | item | keywords | l | label | langUsage | language | lb | lg | licence | list | listBibl | mentioned | milestone | name | note | notesStmt | num | opener | orig | p | pb | pc | postscript | principal | profileDesc | projectDesc | ptr | pubPlace | publicationStmt | publisher | q | ref | refsDecl | reg | relatedItem | resp | respStmt | revisionDesc | row | rs | s | salute | samplingDecl | seg | seriesStmt | sic | signed | soCalled | sourceDesc | sp | speaker | sponsor | stage | table | taxonomy | teiCorpus | teiHeader | term | text | textClass | time | title | titlePage | titlePart | titleStmt | trailer | unclear | val | w

Attributes

@facs (facsimile) points to one or more images, portions of an image, or surfaces which correspond to the current element.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

<group>
  <text xml:id="t1-gl-t1" xml:lang="mi">
  <body xml:id="t1-gl-t1-body1">
    <div type="chapter">
      <head>He Whakamaramatanga mo te Ture Hoko, Riihi hoki, i nga Whenua Maori, 1876.</head>
      <p>…</p>
    </div>
  </body>
</text>
<body xml:id="t1-g1-t2-body1"
corresp="#t1-g1-t1-body1">
  <div type="chapter">
    <head>An Act to regulate the Sale, Letting, and Disposal of Native Lands, 1876.</head>
    <p>…</p>
  </div>
</body>
</text>
</group>

In this example a <group> contains two <text>s, each containing the same document in a different language. The correspondence is indicated using corresp. The language is indicated using xml:lang, whose value is inherited; both the tag with the corresp and the tag pointed to by the corresp inherit the value from their immediate parent.

<!-- In a placeography called "places.xml" -->
<place xml:id="LOND1"
corresp="#people.xml#LOND2 people.xml#GENI1">
  <placeName>London</placeName>
  <desc>The city of London...</desc>
</place>

<!-- In a literary personography called "people.xml" -->
<person xml:id="LOND2"
corresp="#places.xml#LOND1 #GENI1">
  <persName type="lit">London</persName>
  <note>
    <p>Allegorical character representing the city of London.</p>
  </note>
</person>
<person xml:id="GENI1"
corresp="#places.xml#LOND1 #LOND2">
  <persName type="lit">London’s Genius</persName>
  <note>
    <p>Personification of London’s genius. Appears as an allegorical character in mayoral shows.</p>
  </note>
</person>

In this example, a <place> element containing information about the city of London is linked with two <person> elements in a literary personography. This correspondence represents a slightly looser relationship than the one in the preceding example; there is no sense in which an allegorical character could be substituted for the physical city, or vice versa, but there is obviously a correspondence between them.

@next points to the next element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.pointer

Note It is recommended that the element indicated be of the same type as the element bearing this attribute.

@prev (previous) points to the previous element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.pointer

Note It is recommended that the element indicated be of the same type as the element bearing this attribute.
att.global.rendition provides rendering attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme. [1.3.1.3. Rendition Indicators]

Module tei

Members att.global [TEI abbr add addrLine address anchor argument att author authority availability back bibl biblScope body byline catDesc catRef category cell change choice cit classCode classDecl closer code corr creation date dateline del desc distributer div divGen docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl eg emph encodingDesc epigraph expan extent figDesc figure fileDesc foreign formula front funder gap gi gloss graphic group head hi ident idno imprint index interp interpGrp item keywords label langUsage language lb lg licence list listBibl mentioned milestone name note notesStmt num opener orig p pb pc postscript principal profileDesc projectDesc ptr pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q ref refsDecl reg relatedItem resp respStmt revisionDesc row rs s salute samplingDecl seq seriesStmt sic signed soCalled sourceDesc sp speaker sponsor stage table taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader term text textClass time title titlePage titlePart titleStmt trailer unclear val w

Attributes

@rend (rendition) indicates how the element in question was rendered or presented in the source text.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace

Note These Guidelines make no binding recommendations for the values of the rend attribute; the characteristics of visual presentation vary too much from text to text and the decision to record or ignore individual characteristics varies too much from project to project. Some potentially useful conventions are noted from time to time at appropriate points in the Guidelines. The values of the rend attribute are a set of sequence-indeterminate individual tokens separated by whitespace.

att.global.responsibility provides attributes indicating the agent responsible for some aspect of the text, the markup or something asserted by the markup, and the degree of certainty associated with it. [1.3.1.4. Sources, certainty, and responsibility] 3.5. Simple Editorial Changes 11.3.2.2. Hand, Responsibility, and Certainty Attributes 17.3. Spans and Interpretations 13.1.1. Linking Names and Their Referents

Module tei

Members att.global [TEI abbr add addrLine address anchor argument att author authority availability back bibl biblScope body byline catDesc catRef category cell change choice cit classCode classDecl closer code corr creation date dateline del desc distributer div divGen docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl eg emph encodingDesc epigraph expan extent figDesc figure fileDesc foreign formula front funder gap gi gloss graphic group head hi ident idno imprint index interp interpGrp item keywords label langUsage language lb lg licence list listBibl mentioned milestone name note notesStmt num opener orig p pb pc postscript principal profileDesc projectDesc ptr pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q ref refsDecl reg relatedItem resp respStmt revisionDesc row rs s salute samplingDecl seq seriesStmt sic signed soCalled sourceDesc sp speaker sponsor stage table taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader term text textClass time title titlePage titlePart titleStmt trailer unclear val w

268
Attributes

@cert (certainty) signifies the degree of certainty associated with the intervention or interpretation.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.probCert

@resp (responsible party) indicates the agency responsible for the intervention or interpretation, for example an editor or transcriber.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Note To reduce the ambiguity of a resp pointing directly to a person or organization, we recommend that resp be used to point not to an agent <person> or <org> but to a <respStmt>, <author>, <editor> or similar element which clarifies the exact role played by the agent. Pointing to multiple <respStmt>s allows the encoder to specify clearly each of the roles played in part of a TEI file (creating, transcribing, encoding, editing, proofing etc.).

Example

Blessed are the
<choice>
  <corr resp="#editor" cert="high">peacemakers</corr>
</choice>: for they shall be called the children of God.

Example

<!-- in the <text> ... -->
<lg>
<!-- ... -->
  <l>Punkes, Panders, base extortionizing
  sla<choice>
    <corr resp="#JENS1_transcriber">u</corr>
  </choice>
es, </l>
<!-- ... -->
</lg>
<!-- in the <teiHeader> ... -->
<!-- ... -->
<respStmt xml:id="JENS1_transcriber">
  <resp when="2014">Transcriber</resp>
  <name>Janelle Jenstad</name>
</respStmt>

att.global.source provides attributes used by elements to point to an external source.

[1.3.1.1.4. Sources, certainty, and responsibility] [3.3.3. Quotation] [8.3.4. Writing]
Attributes

@source specifies the source from which some aspect of this element is drawn.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:*[@source]">
  <sch:let name="srcs" value="tokenize(normalize-space(@source),' ')">
  <sch:report test="(self::tei:classRef | self::tei:dataRef | self::tei:elementRef |
  self::tei:macroRef | self::tei:moduleRef | self::tei:schemaSpec ) and
  $srcs[2]"> When used on a schema description element (like <sch:value-of select="name(.)"/>), the @source attribute should have only 1 value. (This one has <sch:value-of select="count($srcs)"/>.) </sch:report>
  </sch:let>
</sch:rule>

Note The source attribute points to an external source. When used on an element describing a schema component (<classRef>, <dataRef>, <elementRef>, <macroRef>, <moduleRef>, or <schemaSpec>), it identifies the source from which declarations for the components should be obtained.

On other elements it provides a pointer to the bibliographical source from which a quotation or citation is drawn.

In either case, the location may be provided using any form of URI, for example an absolute URI, a relative URI, a private scheme URI of the form tei:x.y.z, where x.y.z indicates the version number, e.g. tei:4.3.2 for TEI P5 release 4.3.2 or (as a special case) tei:current for whatever is the latest release, or a private scheme URI that is expanded to an absolute URI as documented in a <prefixDef>.

When used on elements describing schema components, source should have only one value; when used on other elements multiple values are permitted.

Example

<p>
  <!-- ... --> As Willard McCarty (<bibl xml:id="mcc_2012">2012, p.2</bibl>) tells us, <quote source="#mcc_2012">'Collaboration’ is a problematic and should be a contested term.</quote>
</p>
Example

```xml
<p>
  <!-- ... -->
  <quote source="#chicago_15_ed">Grammatical theories are in flux, and the more we learn, the less we seem to know.</quote>
  <!-- ... -->
</p>

<bibl xml:id="chicago_15_ed">
</bibl>
```

Example

```xml
<elementRef key="p" source="tei:2.0.1"/>

Include in the schema an element named `<p>` available from the TEI P5 2.0.1 release.
```

Example

```xml
<schemaSpec ident="myODD" source="mycompiledODD.xml">
  <!-- further declarations specifying the components required -->
</schemaSpec>
```

Create a schema using components taken from the file mycompiledODD.xml.

---

**att.interpLike** provides attributes for elements which represent a formal analysis or interpretation. [17.2. Global Attributes for Simple Analyses](#)

**Module** tei

**Members** interp interpGrp

**Attributes**

- @type indicates what kind of phenomenon is being noted in the passage.
  - Status: Recommended
  - Datatype: teidata.enumerated
  - Sample values include: image identifies an image in the passage.
    - character identifies a character associated with the passage.
    - theme identifies a theme in the passage.
    - allusion identifies an allusion to another text.
  - @subtype (subtype) provides a sub-categorization of the phenomenon is being noted in the passage, if needed
    - Status: Optional
    - Datatype: teidata.enumerated
Note The subtype attribute may be used to provide any sub-classification for the element additional to that provided by its type attribute.

@inst (instances) points to instances of the analysis or interpretation represented by the current element.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Note The current element should be an analytic one. The element pointed at should be a textual one.

att.lexicographic.normalized provides attributes for usage within word-level elements in the analysis module and within lexicographic microstructure in the dictionaries module.

Module analysis

Members att.linguistic[pc w]

Attributes

@norm (normalized) provides the normalized/standardized form of information present in the source text in a non-normalized form

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.text

Normalization of part-of-speech information within a dictionary entry. <gramGrp>
   <pos norm="noun">n</pos>
</gramGrp>

Normalization of a source form in a tokenized historical corpus. <s>
   <w>for</w>
   <w norm="virtue's">vertues</w>
   <w>sake</w>
</s>

<s>
   <w norm="persuasion">perswasion</w>
   <w>of</w>
   <w norm="Unity">Vnitie</w>
</s>

   <w norm="freiwillig">freywillig</w>
   <pc norm=""," join="left"/>
   <w norm="unbedränkt">vnbedraṅkt</w>
   <w norm="und">vnd</w>
   <w norm="unverhindert">vnuerhindert</w>
</s>

<w norm="Teil">Theyll</w>

<w norm="Freude">Frewde</w>

@orig (original) gives the original string or is the empty string when the element does not appear in the source text.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.text

Example from a language documentation project of the Mixtepec-Mixtec language (ISO 639-3: 'mix'). This is a use case where speakers spell something incorrectly but we would like to
preserve it for any number of reasons, the use of orig is essential and could have uses for both the speaker to see past mistakes, researchers to get insight into how untrained speakers write their language instinctually (in contrast to prescribed convention), etc.:

Example from the EarlyPrint project. Fragment of text where obvious errors have been corrected but the original forms remain recorded:

```
<w lemma="he" pos="pns"
xm:id="blajf-003-a-0950">he</w>
<w lemma="have" pos="vvz"
xm:id="blajf-003-a-0960">hath</w>
<w lemma="bring" pos="vvn"
xm:id="blajf-003-a-0970">brought</w>
<w lemma="forth" pos="av"
xm:id="blajf-003-a-0980"
orig="sorth">forth</w>
```

An example from the EarlyPrint project showing the use of both norm and orig. The orig attribute preserves the original version (sometimes with spelling errors, often with printer abbreviations), the element content resolves printer abbreviations but retains the original orthography, and the norm attribute holds normalized values:

```
<w lemma="commandment" pos="n1"
norm="commandment"
xm:id="b9avr-018-a-7720"
orig="commandemēt">commandement</w>
```

It needs to be stressed that the two attributes in this class are meant for strictly lexicographic and linguistic uses, and not for editorial interventions. For the latter, the mechanism based on choice, orig, and reg needs to be employed.

**att.linguistic** provides a set of attributes concerning linguistic features of tokens, for usage within token-level elements, specifically `<w>` and `<pc>` in the analysis module. [17.4.2. Lightweight Linguistic Annotation]

**Module** analysis

**Members** pc w

**Attributes** att.lexicographic.normalized (@norm, @orig)

@**lemma** provides a lemma (base form) for the word, typically uninflected and serving both as an identifier (e.g. in dictionary contexts, as a headword), and as a basis for potential inflections.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.text

```
<w lemma="wife">wives</w>
<w lemma="Arznei">Artzeneyen</w>
```

@**lemmaRef** provides a pointer to a definition of the lemma for the word, for example in an online lexicon.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.pointer

```
<w type="verb" lemma="hit"
```
@pos (part of speech) indicates the part of speech assigned to a token (i.e. information on whether it is a noun, adjective, or verb), usually according to some official reference vocabulary (e.g. for German: STTS, for English: CLAWS, for Polish: NKJP, etc.).

Status Optional

Datatype | teidata.text |
---|---|

The German sentence Wir fahren in den Urlaub. tagged with the Stuttgart-Tuebingen-Tagset (STTS).<w><w pos="PPER">Wir</w><w pos="VVFIN">fahren</w><w pos="APPR">in</w><w pos="ART">den</w><w pos="NN">Urlaub</w><w pos="$.">.</w></w>

The English sentence We're going to Brazil. tagged with the CLAWS-5 tagset, arranged inline (with significant whitespace).
<p><w pos="PNP">We</w><w pos="VBB">’re</w><w pos="VVG">going</w><w pos="PRP">to</w></p>

The English sentence We're going on vacation to Brazil for a month! tagged with the CLAWS-7 tagset and arranged sequentially.<p><w pos="PPIS2">We</w><w pos="VBR">’re</w><w pos="VVG">going</w><w pos="II">on</w><w pos="NN1">vacation</w><w pos="II">to</w><w pos="NP1">Brazil</w><w pos="IF">for</w><w pos="AT1">a</w><w pos="NNT1">month</w></p>

@msd (morphosyntactic description) supplies morphosyntactic information for a token, usually according to some official reference vocabulary (e.g. for German: STTS-large tagset; for a feature description system designed as (pragmatically) universal, see Universal Features).

Status Optional

Datatype | teidata.text |
---|---|

<ab>
  <w pos="PPER"
      msd="1.Pl.*.Nom">Wir</w>
  <w pos="VFIN"
      msd="1.Pl.Pres.Ind">fahren</w>
  <w pos="APPR"
      msd="--">in</w>
  <w pos="ART"
      msd="Def.Masc.Akk.Sg">den</w>
  <w pos="NN"
      msd="Masc.Akk.Sg">Urlaub</w>
  <pc pos="$." msd="--">.</pc></ab>
@join when present, provides information on whether the token in question is adjacent to another, and if so, on which side.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.text

**Legal values are:**
- **no** the token is not adjacent to another
- **left** there is no whitespace on the left side of the token
- **right** there is no whitespace on the right side of the token
- **both** there is no whitespace on either side of the token
- **overlap** the token overlaps with another; other devices (specifying the extent and the area of overlap) are needed to more precisely locate this token in the character stream.

The example below assumes that the lack of whitespace is marked redundantly, by using the appropriate values of `join`. `<s>
<pc join="right">"</pc>
<w join="left">Friends</w>
<w>will</w>
<w>be</w>
<w join="right">friends</w>
<pc join="both">.</pc>
<pc join="left">"</pc>
</s>

Note that a project may make a decision to only indicate lack of whitespace in one direction, or do that non-redundantly. The existing proposal is the broadest possible, on the assumption that we adopt the "streamable view", where all the information on the current element needs to be represented locally.

The English sentence We're going on vacation. tagged with the CLAWS-5 tagset, arranged sequentially, tagged on the assumption that only the lack of the preceding whitespace is indicated. `<p>
<w pos="PNP">We</w>
<w pos="VBB" join="left">'re</w>
<w pos="VVG">going</w>
<w pos="PRP">on</w>
<w pos="NN1">vacation</w>
<pc pos="PUN" join="left">.</pc>
</p>

*Note* The definition of this attribute is adapted from ISO MAF (Morpho-syntactic Annotation Framework), ISO 24611:2012.

These attributes make it possible to encode simple language corpora and to add a layer of linguistic information to any tokenized resource. See section 17.4.2, Lightweight Linguistic Annotation for discussion.

---

**att.media** provides attributes for specifying display and related properties of external media.

**Module** tei

**Members** graphic

**Attributes**

@width Where the media are displayed, indicates the display width

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.outputMeasurement
@height Where the media are displayed, indicates the display height
  
  Status Optional
  
  Datatype teidata.outputMeasurement

@scale Where the media are displayed, indicates a scale factor to be applied
  when generating the desired display size
  
  Status Optional
  
  Datatype teidata.numeric

**att.milestoneUnit** provides attributes to indicate the type of section which is changing at a specific milestone. 

[3.11.3. Milestone Elements 2.3.6.3. Milestone Method 2.3.6. The Reference System Declaration]

Module core

Members milestone

Attributes

  @unit provides a conventional name for the kind of section changing at this milestone.
  
  Status Required
  
  Datatype teidata.enumerated

  Suggested values include: page physical page breaks (synonymous with the `<pb>` element).

  column column breaks.

  line line breaks (synonymous with the `<lb>` element).

  book any units termed book, liber, etc.

  poem individual poems in a collection.

  canto cantos or other major sections of a poem.

  speaker changes of speaker or narrator.

  stanza stanzas within a poem, book, or canto.

  act acts within a play.

  scene scenes within a play or act.

  section sections of any kind.

  absent passages not present in the reference edition.

  unnumbered passages present in the text, but not to be included as part of the reference.

  
  `<milestone n="23" ed="La" unit="Dreissiger"/>

  ... `<milestone n="24" ed="AV" unit="verse"/>

  ...`

Note If the milestone marks the beginning of a piece of text not present in the reference edition, the special value absent may be used as the value of unit. The normal interpretation is that the reference edition does not contain the text which follows, until the next `<milestone>` tag for the edition in question is encountered.

In addition to the values suggested, other terms may be appropriate (e.g. Stephanus for the Stephanus numbers in Plato).

The type attribute may be used to characterize the unit...
boundary in any respect other than simply identifying the type of unit, for example as word-breaking or not.

**att.naming** provides attributes common to elements which refer to named persons, places, organizations etc. 

Module tei

Members att.personal(name) author editor pubPlace rs

Attributes att.naming (@role, @nymRef)

- @role may be used to specify further information about the entity referenced by this name in the form of a set of whitespace-separated values, for example the occupation of a person, or the status of a place.
  
  Status Optional
  
  Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace

- @nymRef (reference to the canonical name) provides a means of locating the canonical form (nym) of the names associated with the object named by the element bearing it.
  
  Status Optional
  
  Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Note The value must point directly to one or more XML elements by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied, the implication is that the name is associated with several distinct canonical names.

**att.notated** provides attributes to indicate any specialised notation used for element content.

Module tei

Members formula s seg w

Attributes

- @notation names the notation used for the content of the element.
  
  Status Optional
  
  Datatype teidata.enumerated

**att.personal** (attributes for components of names usually, but not necessarily, personal names) common attributes for those elements which form part of a name usually, but not necessarily, a personal name. 

Module tei

Members name

Attributes att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))

- @full indicates whether the name component is given in full, as an abbreviation or simply as an initial.
  
  Status Optional
  
  Datatype teidata.enumerated

Legal values are: yes (yes) the name component is spelled out in full.[Default]
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

**abb** (abbreviated) the name component is given in an abbreviated form.

**init** (initial letter) the name component is indicated only by one initial.

**@sort** (sort) specifies the sort order of the name component in relation to others within the name.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `teidata.count`

---

**att.placement** provides attributes for describing where on the source page or object a textual element appears. [3.5.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions Additions and Deletions]

*Module* `tei`

*Members* `add figure head label note stage trailer`

*Attributes*

**@place** specifies where this item is placed.

*Status* Recommended

*Datatype* `1–∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated` separated by whitespace

*Suggested values include:* `top` at the top of the page

- `bottom` at the foot of the page
- `margin` in the margin (left, right, or both)
- `opposite` on the opposite, i.e. facing, page
- `overleaf` on the other side of the leaf
- `above` above the line
- `right` to the right, e.g. to the right of a vertical line of text, or to the right of a figure
- `below` below the line
- `left` to the left, e.g. to the left of a vertical line of text, or to the left of a figure
- `end` at the end of e.g. chapter or volume.
- `inline` within the body of the text.
- `inspace` in a predefined space, for example left by an earlier scribe.

```xml
<add place="margin">[An addition written in the margin]</add>
<add place="bottom opposite">[An addition written at the foot of the current page and also on the facing page]</add>
<note place="bottom">Ibid, p.7</note>
```

---

**att.pointing** provides a set of attributes used by all elements which point to other elements by means of one or more URI references. [1.3.1.1.2. Language Indicators 3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References]

*Module* `tei`

*Members* `catRef gloss licence note ptr ref term`

*Attributes*
@targetLang specifies the language of the content to be found at the destination referenced by target, using a language tag generated according to BCP 47.

**Status**: Optional

**Datatype**: teidata.language

**Schematron**

```xml
<sch:rule context="tei:*[not(self::tei:/schemaSpec)][@targetLang]">  
  <sch:assert test="@target">@targetLang should only be used on
  </sch:assert>
</sch:rule>
```

```xml
<linkGrp xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1-linkGrp">
  <ptr xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1.1-ptr"  
      target="pol/UDHR/text.xml#pol_txt_1-head"  
      type="tuv"  
      targetLang="pl"/>
  <ptr xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1.2-ptr"  
      target="sw/UDHR/text.xml#swh_txt_1-head"  
      type="tuv"  
      targetLang="sw"/>
</linkGrp>
```

In the example above, the `<linkGrp>` combines pointers at parallel fragments of the *Universal Declaration of Human Rights*: one of them is in Polish, the other in Swahili.

**Note** The value must conform to BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -x-), a `<language>` element with a matching value for its ident attribute should be supplied in the TEI header to document this value. Such documentation may also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though these must remain consistent with their (IETF) Internet Engineering Task Force definitions.

@target specifies the destination of the reference by supplying one or more URI

**Status**: Optional

**Datatype**: 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

**Note** One or more syntactically valid URI references, separated by whitespace. Because whitespace is used to separate URIs, no whitespace is permitted inside a single URI. If a whitespace character is required in a URI, it should be escaped with the normal mechanism, e.g. TEI%20Consortium.

@evaluate (evaluate) specifies the intended meaning when the target of a pointer is itself a pointer.

**Status**: Optional

**Datatype**: teidata.enumerated

**Legal values are**: all if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then the target of that pointer will be taken, and so on, until an element is found which is not a pointer.

one if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then its target (whether a pointer or not) is taken as the target of this pointer.

none no further evaluation of targets is carried out beyond that needed to find the element specified in the pointer’s target.

**Note** If no value is given, the application program is responsible for deciding (possibly on the basis of user input) how far to trace a chain of pointers.
att.ranging provides attributes for describing numerical ranges.

**Module**: tei

**Members**: att.dimensions[add date del gap time unclear num]

**Attributes**

- **@atLeast**: gives a minimum estimated value for the approximate measurement.
  - **Status**: Optional
  - **Datatype**: teidata.numeric

- **@atMost**: gives a maximum estimated value for the approximate measurement.
  - **Status**: Optional
  - **Datatype**: teidata.numeric

- **@min**: where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the minimum value observed.
  - **Status**: Optional
  - **Datatype**: teidata.numeric

- **@max**: where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the maximum value observed.
  - **Status**: Optional
  - **Datatype**: teidata.numeric

- **@confidence**: specifies the degree of statistical confidence (between zero and one) that a value falls within the range specified by min and max, or the proportion of observed values that fall within that range.
  - **Status**: Optional
  - **Datatype**: teidata.probability

**Example**

```
The MS. was lost in transmission by mail from <del rend="overstrike"><gap reason="illegible" extent="one or two letters" atLeast="1" atMost="2" unit="chars"/></del> Philadelphia to the Graphic office, New York.
```

**Example**

```
Americares has been supporting the health sector in Eastern Europe since 1986, and since 1992 has provided <measure atLeast="120000000" unit="USD" commodity="currency">more than $120m</measure> in aid to Ukrainians.
```

att.resourced provides attributes by which a resource (such as an externally held media file) may be located.

**Module**: tei

**Members**: graphic

**Attributes**

- **@url**: (uniform resource locator) specifies the URL from which the media concerned may be obtained.
  - **Status**: Required
att.segLike provides attributes for elements used for arbitrary segmentation.

Datatype teidata.pointer

Module tei
Members pc s seg w
Attributes att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat, @targetDatcat) att.fragmentable (@part)

@function (function) characterizes the function of the segment.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Note Attribute values will often vary depending on the type of element to which they are attached. For example, a <cl>, may take values such as coordinate, subject, adverbial etc. For a <phr>, such values as subject, predicate etc. may be more appropriate. Such constraints will typically be implemented by a project-defined customization.

att.sortable provides attributes for elements in lists or groups that are sortable, but whose sorting key cannot be derived mechanically from the element content.

Module tei
Members bibl idno item list listBibl term
Attributes

@sortKey supplies the sort key for this element in an index, list or group which contains it.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.word

David’s other principal backer, Josiah ha-Kohen <index indexName="NAMES">
<term sortKey="Azarya_Josiah_Kohen">Josiah ha-Kohen b. Azarya</term>
</index> b. Azarya, son of one of the last gaons of Sura was David’s own first cousin.

Note The sort key is used to determine the sequence and grouping of entries in an index. It provides a sequence of characters which, when sorted with the other values, will produced the desired order; specifics of sort key construction are application-dependent

Dictionary order often differs from the collation sequence of machine-readable character sets; in English-language dictionaries, an entry for 4-H will often appear alphabetized under fourth, and McCoy may be alphabetized under maccoy, while A1, A4, and A5 may all appear in numeric order alphabetized between a- and AA. The sort key is required if the orthography of the dictionary entry does not suffice to determine its location.

att.spanning provides attributes for elements which delimit a span of text by pointing
mechanisms rather than by enclosing it. [11.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions]

Attribute Classes

Module tei

Members index lb milestone pb

Attributes

@spanTo indicates the end of a span initiated by the element bearing this attribute.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.pointer

Schematron The @spanTo attribute must point to an element following the current element

<sch:rule context="tei:*[@spanTo]">
<sch:assert test="id(substring(@spanTo,2)) and following::*[@xml:id=substring(current()/@spanTo,2)]">The element indicated by @spanTo
(<sch:value-of select="@spanTo"/>) must follow the current element <sch:name/> </sch:assert> </sch:rule>

The span is defined as running in document order from the start of the content of the pointing element to the end of the content of the element pointed to by the spanTo attribute (if any). If no value is supplied for the attribute, the assumption is that the span is coextensive with the pointing element. If no content is present, the assumption is that the starting point of the span is immediately following the element itself.

att.tableDecoration provides attributes used to decorate rows or cells of a table. [14. Tables, Formulæ, Graphics, and Notated Music]

Module figures

Members cell row

Attributes

@role (role) indicates the kind of information held in this cell or in each cell of this row.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Suggested values include: label labelling or descriptive information only.

data data values.[Default]

Note When this attribute is specified on a row, its value is the default for all cells in this row. When specified on a cell, its value overrides any default specified by the role attribute of the parent <row> element.

@rows (rows) indicates the number of rows occupied by this cell or row.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.count

Default 1

Note A value greater than one indicates that this cell spans several rows. Where several cells span multiple rows, it may be more convenient to use nested tables.

@cols (columns) indicates the number of columns occupied by this cell or row.
**att.timed**

Provides attributes common to those elements which have a duration in time, expressed either absolutely or by reference to an alignment map. [§3.5. Temporal Information](#)

*Module* tei

*Members* gap

*Attributes*

- **@start** indicates the location within a temporal alignment at which this element begins.
  - *Status* Optional
  - *Datatype* teidata.pointer
  - *Note* If no value is supplied, the element is assumed to follow the immediately preceding element at the same hierarchic level.

- **@end** indicates the location within a temporal alignment at which this element ends.
  - *Status* Optional
  - *Datatype* teidata.pointer
  - *Note* If no value is supplied, the element is assumed to precede the immediately following element at the same hierarchic level.

---

**att.transcriptional** provides attributes specific to elements encoding authorial or scribal intervention in a text when transcribing manuscript or similar sources. [11.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions](#)

*Module* tei

*Members* add del

*Attributes* att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.written (@hand)

- **@status** indicates the effect of the intervention, for example in the case of a deletion, strikeouts which include too much or too little text, or in the case of an addition, an insertion which duplicates some of the text already present.
  - *Status* Optional
  - *Datatype* teidata.enumerated

  *Sample values include:*
  - **duplicate** all of the text indicated as an addition duplicates some text that is in the original, whether the duplication is word-for-word or less exact.
  - **duplicate-partial** part of the text indicated as an addition duplicates some text that is in the original
  - **excessStart** some text at the beginning of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted.
excessEnd  some text at the end of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted.

shortStart some text at the beginning of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.

shortEnd some text at the end of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.

partial some text in the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.

unremarkable the deletion is not faulty.[Default]

Note Status information on each deletion is needed rather rarely except in critical editions from authorial manuscripts; status information on additions is even less common.

Marking a deletion or addition as faulty is inescapably an interpretive act; the usual test applied in practice is the linguistic acceptability of the text with and without the letters or words in question.

@cause documents the presumed cause for the intervention.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

@seq (sequence) assigns a sequence number related to the order in which the encoded features carrying this attribute are believed to have occurred.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.count

att.translatable provides attributes used to indicate the status of a translatable portion of an ODD document.

Module tagdocs

Members desc gloss

Attributes

@versionDate specifies the date on which the source text was extracted and sent to the translator

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.temporal.working

Note The versionDate attribute can be used to determine whether a translation might need to be revisited, by comparing the modification date on the containing file with the versionDate value on the translation. If the file has changed, changelogs can be checked to see whether the source text has been modified since the translation was made.

att.typed provides attributes that can be used to classify or subclassify elements in any way.
Module tei

Members TEI abbr add anchor bibl change cit corr date del desc div divGen figure gloss graphic group head ident idno label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note num pb pc ptr ref reg relatedItem rs s seg table teiCorpus term text time title titlePage titlePart trailer w

Attributes

@type characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

<div type="verse">
  <head>Night in Tarras</head>
  <lg type="stanza">
    <l>At evening tramping on the hot white road</l>
  </lg>
  <lg type="stanza">
    <l>A wind sprang up from nowhere as the sky</l>
  </lg>
</div>

Note The type attribute is present on a number of elements, not all of which are members of att.typed, usually because these elements restrict the possible values for the attribute in a specific way.

@subtype (subtype) provides a sub-categorization of the element, if needed

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Note The subtype attribute may be used to provide any sub-classification for the element additional to that provided by its type attribute.

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:[@subtype]"> <sch:assert test="@type">The <sch:name/> element should not be categorized in detail with @subtype unless also categorized in general with @type</sch:assert> </sch:rule>

Note When appropriate, values from an established typology should be used. Alternatively a typology may be defined in the associated TEI header. If values are to be taken from a project-specific list, this should be defined using the <valList> element in the project-specific schema description, as described in 23.3.1.3. Modification of Attribute and Attribute Value Lists.

att.written provides attributes to indicate the hand in which the content of an element was written in the source being transcribed. [1.3.1. Attribute Classes]

Module tei

Members att.transcriptional add del closer div figure head hi label note opener p postscript salute seg signed stage text trailer

Attributes
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

@hand points to a <handNote> element describing the hand considered responsible for the content of the element concerned.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata pointer

A.4 Macros

**macro.limitedContent** (paragraph content) defines the content of prose elements that are not used for transcription of extant materials. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

*Module* tei
*Used by* desc figDesc
*Content model*

```xml
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <TextNode/>
    <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/>
    <classRef key="model.inter"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

*Declaration*

```
macro.limitedContent = ( text | model.limitedPhrase | model.inter )*  
```

**macro.paraContent** (paragraph content) defines the content of paragraphs and similar elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

*Module* tei
*Used by* add corr del docEdition emph hi imprimatur orig p ref reg salute seg sic signed title titlePart unclear
*Content model*

```xml
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <TextNode/>
    <classRef key="model.paraPart"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

*Declaration*

```
macro.paraContent = ( text | model.paraPart )*  
```

**macro.phraseSeq** (phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and phrase-level elements. [1.4.1. Standard Content Models]

*Module* tei
macro.phraseSeq.limited (limited phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and those phrase-level elements that are not typically used for transcribing extant documents. [1.4.1. Standard Content Models]

Module tei
Used by abbr addrLine author biblScope distributor docAuthor docDate edition editor eg expand extent foreign gloss label mentioned name num pubPlace publisher rs rs

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.attributable"/>
    <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Declaration

```xml
macro.phraseSeq.limited = ( text | model.limitedPhrase | model.global )*
```

macro.specialPara (‘special’ paragraph content) defines the content model of elements such as notes or list items, which either contain a series of component-level elements or else have the same structure as a paragraph, containing a series of phrase-level and inter-level elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

Module tei
Used by cell change item licence note q stage

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Declaration

```xml
macro.specialPara = ( text | model.limitedPhrase | model.global )*
```
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

maxOccurs="unbounded">
<textNode/>
<classRef key="model.gLike"/>
<classRef key="model.phrase"/>
<classRef key="model.inter"/>
<classRef key="model.divPart"/>
<classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
</content>

Declaration

macro.specialPara =
  (text
   | model.gLike |
   model.phrase |
   model.inter |
   model.divPart |
   model.global)

A.5 Datatypes

teidata.certainty defines the range of attribute values expressing a degree of certainty.

Module tei

Used by teidata.probCert

Content model

<content>
<valList type="closed">
<valItem ident="high"/>
<valItem ident="medium"/>
<valItem ident="low"/>
<valItem ident="unknown"/>
</valList>
</content>

Declaration

teidata.certainty = "high" | "medium" | "low" | "unknown"

Note Certainty may be expressed by one of the predefined symbolic values high, medium, or low. The value unknown should be used in cases where the encoder does not wish to assert an opinion about the matter.

teidata.count defines the range of attribute values used for a non-negative integer value used as a count.

Module tei

Used by Element:
  • table/@rows
  • table/@cols

Content model

<content>
<dataRef name="nonNegativeInteger"/>

288
teidata.duration.iso defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using ISO 8601 standard formats

Module tei
Used by
Content model

Example

<time dur-iso="PT0,75H">three-quarters of an hour</time>

Example

<date dur-iso="P1,5D">a day and a half</date>

Example

<date dur-iso="P14D">a fortnight</date>

Example

<time dur-iso="PT0.02S">20 ms</time>

Note. A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the last, which may have a decimal component (using either . or , as the decimal point; the latter is preferred). If any number is 0, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator T must precede the first time number-letter pair.

For complete details, see ISO 8601 Data elements and interchange formats — Information interchange — Representation of dates and times.

---

teidata.duration.w3c defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using W3C datatypes.

Module tei
Used by
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Content model
<content> <dataRef name="duration"/> </content>

Declaration

tedata.duration.w3c = xsd:duration

Example

  <time dur="PT45M">forty-five minutes</time>

Example

  <date dur="P1D1T12H">a day and a half</date>

Example

  <date dur="P7D">a week</date>

Example

  <time dur="PT0.02S">20 ms</time>

Note A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the S number, which may have a decimal component (using . as the decimal point). If any number is 0, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator T must precede the first time number-letter pair.

For complete details, see the W3C specification.

tedata.enumerated defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single XML name taken from a list of documented possibilities.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- abbr/@type
- att/@scheme
- availability/@status
- desc/@type
- divGen/@type
- gap/@reason
- gap/@agent
- gl/@scheme
- idno/@type
- list/@type
- num/@type
- pc/@force
- pc/@unit
- q/@type
- stage/@type
- title/@type

290
teidata.language defines the range of attribute values used to identify a particular combination of human language and writing system. [6.1. Language Identification]

Module tei

Used by Element:

- language/@ident

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <alternate>
    <dataRef name="language"/>
    <valList>
      <valItem ident="/"/>
    </valList>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Declaration `teidata.language = xsd:language | ( "" )`

Note The values for this attribute are language tags as defined in BCP 47. Currently BCP 47 comprises RFC 5646 and RFC 4647; over time, other IETF documents may succeed these as the best current practice.

A language tag, per BCP 47, is assembled from a sequence of components or subtags separated by the hyphen character (-, U+002D). The tag is made of the following subtags, in the following order. Every subtag except the first is optional. If present, each occurs only once, except the fourth and fifth components (variant and extension), which are repeatable.

**language** The IANA-registered code for the language. This is almost always the same as the ISO 639 2-letter language code if there is one. The list of available registered language subtags can be found at [http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry](http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry).

It is recommended that this code be written in lower case.

**script** The ISO 15924 code for the script. These codes consist of 4 letters, and it is recommended they be written with an initial capital, the other three letters in lower case. The canonical list of codes is maintained by the Unicode
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Consortium, and is available at http://unicode.org/iso15924/iso15924-codes.html. The IETF recommends this code be omitted unless it is necessary to make a distinction you need.

region Either an ISO 3166 country code or a UN M.49 region code that is registered with IANA (not all such codes are registered, e.g. UN codes for economic groupings or codes for countries for which there is already an ISO 3166 2-letter code are not registered). The former consist of 2 letters, and it is recommended they be written in upper case; the list of codes can be searched or browsed at https://www.iso.org/obp/ui/#search/code/. The latter consist of 3 digits; the list of codes can be found at http://unstats.un.org/unsd/methods/m49/m49.htm.

variant An IANA-registered variation. These codes are used to indicate additional, well-recognized variations that define a language or its dialects that are not covered by other available subtags.

extension An extension has the format of a single letter followed by a hyphen followed by additional subtags. These exist to allow for future extension to BCP 47, but as of this writing no such extensions are in use.

private use An extension that uses the initial subtag of the single letter x (i.e., starts with x-) has no meaning except as negotiated among the parties involved. These should be used with great care, since they interfere with the interoperability that use of RFC 4646 is intended to promote. In order for a document that makes use of these subtags to be TEI-conformant, a corresponding <language> element must be present in the TEI header.

There are two exceptions to the above format. First, there are language tags in the IANA registry that do not match the above syntax, but are present because they have been grandfathered from previous specifications.

Second, an entire language tag can consist of only a private use subtag. These tags start with x-, and do not need to follow any further rules established by the IETF and endorsed by these Guidelines. Like all language tags that make use of private use subtags, the language in question must be documented in a corresponding <language> element in the TEI header.

Examples include

- sn Shona
- zh-TW Taiwanese
- zh-Hant-HK Chinese written in traditional script as used in Hong Kong
- en-SL English as spoken in Sierra Leone
- pl Polish
- es-MX Spanish as spoken in Mexico
- es-419 Spanish as spoken in Latin America

The W3C Internationalization Activity has published a useful introduction to BCP 47, Language tags in HTML and XML.

teidata.name defines the range of attribute values expressed as an XML Name.

Module tei

292
teidata.namespae

**Used by**
- Element: `index/@indexName`

**Content model**
```xml
<content> <dataRef name="Name"/> </content>
```

**Declaration**
```
teidata.name = xsd:Name
```

**Note** Attributes using this datatype must contain a single word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see https://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name): for example they cannot include whitespace or begin with digits.

---

**teidata.namespace** defines the range of attribute values used to indicate XML namespaces as defined by the W3C Namespaces in XML Technical Recommendation.

**Module** tei

**Used by**

**Content model**
```xml
<content>
    <dataRef restriction="\S*" name="anyURI"/>
</content>
```

**Declaration**
```
teidata.namespace = xsd:anyURI { pattern = "\S*" }
```

**Note** The range of syntactically valid values is defined by RFC 3986 Uniform Resource Identifier (URI): Generic Syntax.

---

**teidata.numeric** defines the range of attribute values used for numeric values.

**Module** tei

**Used by** Element: `num/@value`

**Content model**
```xml
<content>
    <alternate>
        <dataRef name="double"/>
        <dataRef name="token" restriction="(-?\[d]+/-?\[d]+)"/>
        <dataRef name="decimal"/>
    </alternate>
</content>
```

**Declaration**
```
teidata.numeric = xsd:double | token { pattern = "(-?\[d]+/-?\[d]+)" } | xsd:decimal
```

**Note** Any numeric value, represented as a decimal number, in floating point format, or as a ratio.

To represent a floating point number, expressed in scientific notation, E notation, a variant of exponential notation, may be used. In this format, the value is expressed
as two numbers separated by the letter E. The first number, the significand (sometimes called the mantissa) is given in decimal format, while the second is an integer. The value is obtained by multiplying the mantissa by 10 the number of times indicated by the integer. Thus the value represented in decimal notation as 1000.0 might be represented in scientific notation as 10E3.

A value expressed as a ratio is represented by two integer values separated by a solidus (/) character. Thus, the value represented in decimal notation as 0.5 might be represented as a ratio by the string 1/2.

**teidata.outputMeasurement** defines a range of values for use in specifying the size of an object that is intended for display.

**Module** tei

**Used by**

**Content model**

```
<content>
  <dataRef name="token"
    restriction="[\-+]?\d+(\.\d+)?(%|cm|mm|in|pt|pc|px|em|ex|ch|rem|vw|vh|vmin|vmax)"/>
</content>
```

**Declaration**

```
teidata.outputMeasurement =
  token
  {
    pattern = "[\-+]?\d+(\.\d+)?(%|cm|mm|in|pt|pc|px|em|ex|ch|rem|vw|vh|vmin|vmax)"
  }
```

**Example**

```
<figure>
  <head>The TEI Logo</head>
  <figDesc>Stylized yellow angle brackets with the letters TEI mentioned in between and text encoding initiative mentioned underneath, all on a white background.</figDesc>
  <graphic height="600px" width="600px"
    url="http://www.tei-c.org/logos/TEI-600.jpg"/>
</figure>
```

**Note** These values map directly onto the values used by XSL-FO and CSS. For definitions of the units see those specifications; at the time of this writing the most complete list is in the CSS3 working draft.

**teidata.pattern** defines attribute values which are expressed as a regular expression.

**Module** tei

**Used by**

**Content model**

```
<content> <dataRef name="token"/></content>
```

**Declaration**

```
teidata.pattern = token
```

294
A regular expression, often called a pattern, is an expression that describes a set of strings. They are usually used to give a concise description of a set, without having to list all elements. For example, the set containing the three strings *Handel*, *Händel*, and *Haendel* can be described by the pattern \( H(\ddot{a}|ae?)ndel \) (or alternatively, it is said that the pattern \( H(\ddot{a}|ae?)ndel \) matches each of the three strings).

This TEI datatype is mapped to the XSD token datatype, and may therefore contain any string of characters. However, it is recommended that the value used conform to the particular flavour of regular expression syntax supported by XSD Schema.

---

**teidata.pointer** defines the range of attribute values used to provide a single URI, absolute or relative, pointing to some other resource, either within the current document or elsewhere.

**Module** tei

**Used by** Element:

- `catRef/@scheme`
- `change/@target`
- `classCode/@scheme`
- `keywords/@scheme`
- `relatedItem/@target`

**Content model**

```xml
<content>
  <dataRef restriction="\S+" name="anyURI"/>
</content>
```

**Declaration**

```
teidata.pointer = xsd:anyURI { pattern = "\S+" }
```


---

**teidata.probCert** defines a range of attribute values which can be expressed either as a numeric probability or as a coded certainty value.

**Module** tei

**Used by**

**Content model**

```xml
<content>
  <alternate>
    <dataRef key="teidata.probability"/>
    <dataRef key="teidata.certainty"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Declaration

```markdown
teidata.probCert = teidata.probability | teidata.certainty
```

teidata.probability defines the range of attribute values expressing a probability.

Module: tei

Used by: teidata.probCert

Content model:

```xml
<content> <dataRef name="double"/></content>
```

Declaration: `teidata.probability = xsd:double`

Note: Probability is expressed as a real number between 0 and 1; 0 representing certainly false and 1 representing certainly true.

---

teidata.replacement defines attribute values which contain a replacement template.

Module: tei

Used by:

Content model:

```xml
<content> <textNode/></content>
```

Declaration: `teidata.replacement = text`

---

teidata.temporal.w3c defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition specification.

Module: tei

Used by: Element:

- `docDate/@when`

Content model:

```xml
<content>
<alternate>
<dataRef name="date"/>
<dataRef name="gYear"/>
<dataRef name="gMonth"/>
<dataRef name="gDay"/>
<dataRef name="gYearMonth"/>
<dataRef name="gMonthDay"/>
<dataRef name="time"/>
<dataRef name="dateTime"/>
</alternate>
</content>
```

Declaration:

```markdown
teidata.temporal.w3c = xsd:date | xsd:gYear | xsd:gMonth | xsd:gDay | xsd:gYearMonth
```
**teidata.temporal.working** defines the range of values, conforming to the W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition specification, expressing a date or a date and a time within the working life of the document.

*Module* tei

*Used by*

*Content model*

```xml
<content>
  <alternate>
    <dataRef name="date"
      restriction="(19[789][0-9]|1[2-9][0-9]{3}).*"/>
    <dataRef name="dateTime"
      restriction="(19[789][0-9]|1[2-9][0-9]{3}).*"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

*Declaration*

```
teidata.temporal.working =
  xsd:date { pattern = "(19[789][0-9]|1[2-9][0-9]{3}).*" }
| xsd:dateTime { pattern = "(19[789][0-9]|1[2-9][0-9]{3}).*" }
```

*Note* If it is likely that the value used is to be compared with another, then a time zone indicator should always be included, and only the dateTime representation should be used.

The earliest time expressable with this datatype is 01 January 1970 (the Unix Epoch), which could be written as either 1970-01-01 or 1970-01-01T00:00:00Z.

---

**teidata.text** defines the range of attribute values used to express some kind of identifying string as a single sequence of Unicode characters possibly including whitespace.

*Module* tei

*Used by*

*Content model* 

```
<content> <dataRef name="string"/> </content>
```

*Declaration*

```
teidata.text = string
```

*Note* Attributes using this datatype must contain a single token in which whitespace and other punctuation characters are permitted.

---

**teidata.truthValue** defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value.

*Module* tei
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

*Used by* Element:

- `pc/@pre`

*Content model* `<content> <dataRef name="boolean"/></content>`

*Declaration* `teidata.truthValue = xsd:boolean`

*Note* The possible values of this datatype are 1 or true, or 0 or false.

This datatype applies only for cases where uncertainty is inappropriate; if the attribute concerned may have a value other than true or false, e.g. unknown, or inapplicable, it should have the extended version of this datatype: 

`teidata.xTruthValue`.

teidata.unboundedCount defines the range of values used for a counting number or the string unbounded for infinity.

*Module* `tei`

*Used by* Element:

- `teiCorpus/@version`

*Content model* `<content>
  <alternate>
    <dataRef name="nonNegativeInteger"/>
    <valList type="closed">
      <valItem ident="unbounded"/>
    </valList>
  </alternate>
</content>`

*Declaration* `teidata.unboundedCount = xsd:nonNegativeInteger | { "unbounded" }`

teidata.version defines the range of attribute values which may be used to specify a TEI or Unicode version number.

*Module* `tei`

*Used by* Element:

- `teiCorpus/@version`

*Content model* `<content>
  <dataRef name="token"
    restriction="[\d]+(\.[\d]+){0,2}"/>
</content>`

*Declaration* `teidata.version = token { pattern = "[\d]+(\.[\d]+){0,2}" }`

*Note* The value of this attribute follows the pattern specified by the Unicode consortium for its version number ([http://unicode.org/versions/](http://unicode.org/versions/)). A version number
contains digits and fullstop characters only. The first number supplied identifies the major version number. A second and third number, for minor and sub-minor version numbers, may also be supplied.

**teidata.versionNumber** defines the range of attribute values used for version numbers.

*Module* tei

*Used by*

*Content model*

```xml
<content>
  <dataRef name="token"
    restriction="^[\d][a-z]*[^\d]*\([^\d][a-z]*[^\d]*\]{0,3}"/>
</content>
```

*Declaration*

```java
teidata.versionNumber =
  token { pattern = "^[\d][a-z]*[^\d]*\([^\d][a-z]*[^\d]*\){0,3}" }
```

**teidata.word** defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single word or token.

*Module* tei

*Used by* teidata.enumerated

*Element:*

- `code/@lang`

*Content model*

```xml
<content>
  <dataRef name="token"
    restriction="[^\p{C}\p{Z}]+"/>
</content>
```

*Declaration* `teidata.word = token { pattern = "[^\p{C}\p{Z}]+" }`

*Note* Attributes using this datatype must contain a single word which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace.

**teidata.xTruthValue** (extended truth value) defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value which may be unknown.

*Module* tei

*Used by*

*Content model*

```xml
<content>
  <alternate>
    <dataRef name="boolean"/>
    <valList>
      <valItem ident="unknown"/>
      <valItem ident="inapplicable"/>
    </valList>
  </alternate>
</content>
```
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Declaration

```
teidata.xTruthValue = xsd:boolean | ( "unknown" | "inapplicable" )
```

Note In cases where uncertainty is inappropriate, use the datatype `teidata.TruthValue`.

---

teidata.xmlName defines attribute values which contain an XML name.

*Module* tei

*Used by*

*Content model*

```
<content> <dataRef name="NCName"/></content>
```

*Declaration*

```
teidata.xmlName = xsd:NCName
```

*Note* The rules defining an XML name form a part of the XML Specification.

---

teidata.xpath defines attribute values which contain an XPath expression.

*Module* tei

*Used by*

*Content model*

```
<content> <textNode/></content>
```

*Declaration*

```
teidata.xpath = text
```

*Note* Any XPath expression using the syntax defined in 6.2.

When writing programs that evaluate XPath expressions, programmers should be mindful of the possibility of malicious code injection attacks. For further information about XPath injection attacks, see the article at OWASP.